

A NEW and EASY  
M E T H O D

To Understand the  
Roman History.

With an Exact Chronology of the  
Reign of the Emperors; An Account  
of the most Eminent Authors, when  
they flourish'd; And an Abridgment of  
the *Roman* Antiquities and Customs.

By Way of DIALOGUE,  
For the Use of the Duke of *Burgundy*.

---

*Done out of French, with very Large Additions and Amendments, by Mr. Tho. Brown.*

---

*Ita latè per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui  
res ejus legunt, non unius populi, sed generis hu-  
mani facta discant. Luc. Flor.*

---

London: Printed for R. Baldwin, near the  
Oxford-Arms in Warwick Lane: And  
W. Lindley, at the Angel in Chancery  
Lane. MDCXC V.

## *Advertisement.*

**M***iscellanea*: Or a Choice Collection of  
*Wise and Ingenious Sayings*, &c. of  
Princes, Philosophers, Statesmen, Courtiers;  
and others; Out of several Ancient and  
Modern Authors: For the pleasurable En-  
tertainment of the Nobility and Gentry of  
both Sexes. By G. M.

*Printed for William Lindsey at the Angel near  
Lincolns-Inn in Chancery-Lane, 1694.*



x 937

F 92 m E b

## T H E

## Translator's Preface.

**T**Here are Two Popular Objections commonly made against Abridgments, which I shall endeavour to answer one after the other : The first is, That they have occasion'd the Loss of the greater Volumes from whence they were extracted. Thus, for instance, the Loss of Trogus Pompeius is imputed to Justin ; that of Livy to Florus or his Epitomator ; and Xiphilinus, a Monk of Constantinople, who flourish'd about the middle of the Eleventh Century, is charged with depriving the world of Dion Cassius. Nay, the Loss of all the Texts and Decisions of the Learned Lawyers before him, is attributed to Trebonian, who compil'd his Pandeſts out of them. This Notion was started by some Learned Men of the last Age, as Bodin, Casaubon, and my Lord Bacon ; and since their time, merely, I suppose, upon their Credit and Authority, it has been almost universally received, without any manner of Examination. However, with a due submission be it spoken to Persons of their deserved Esteem and Reputation in the world, I cannot persuade myself, that this Accusation is well supported ; for besides that we have the Misfortune

A 2  
722457

to

## The Translator's Preface.

to regret the want of several useful Books, which as far as we know were never abbreviated, such as Diodorus Siculus, and Dionysius Halicarnassens; and on the other hand enjoy several others that were Epitomized, as we find the History of Herodotus is still extant, altho one Theopompus, whom Suidas mentions, had made an *Abridgment* of it; both which Instances are sufficient to overthrow this precarious Hypothesis; yet in my opinion there are so many better Reasons to be assigned for the Loss of these precious Monuments of Antiquity, that I am apt to flatter myself it will be no disagreeable Entertainment to the Reader to give him a short View of them. Before the Art of Printing was discover'd, it may easily be imagined, That as Volumes of any considerable Bulk were infinitely more Expensive than now they are, so they could only be purchased by men of Plentiful Fortunes; that consequently they were nothing near so well diffused; and when they happen'd to be lost or impaired by time, the Loss was neither so soon, nor so easily recruited. If to this we add, That in that part of the world which had formerly been the Seat of all Arts and Sciences, Learning began to be neglected, if not despised; and that from another part of it vast Inundations of Barbarous People were continually pouring down, who swept away every thing before them; no considering man I believe will find it strange, That amidst the vast Treasures of the Ancient Ages, so few should escape so general a Shipwrack, and arrive safe to our hands. That this was the case of the Roman  
Em-

## The Translator's Preface.

*Empire in its declining Period, no body that is not utterly unacquainted with their History, will presume to question. As soon as that Vigorous Spirit which animated their Republic, had wholly abandon'd them, Learning and Learned Men made but a very inconsiderable Figure among them. Hence we see, that from the time of the Antonines till Diocletian, they did not produce one single Historian above the rank of our Modern Grubstreet Annalists. I could not prevail with my self to allow the Scriptorum Augustæ Historiæ, who lived in this Interval, a better station; for tho'tis certain that sorry Guides are better than none at all, yet the Stile of the above-mentioned Writers is so extremely vicious, their Conduct so injudicious, and their Relations of all Transactions so jejune and insipid, that any one that will submit to the Penance of turning over their Works, will soon be convinced to his cost, that what I have told him, is true. While Learning was thus daily decaying in its Vitals, all this while Epitomes were given it to keep it alive: not that they contributed to the loss of the Greater Volumes, which would have been destroy'd without them; but they were the only Books that then pleased, and were in vogue; whether it was that the sickly Genius of those Ages could not endure Volumes of a larger size, which it required a more healthful Constitution to digest; or whether the continual Alarms of their Enemies just allowed them time enough to peruse short Manuals; as we see men seldom sit down to a Regular Dinner, when they are every moment in danger of having their Quarters beaten up. For*

## The Translator's Preface.

*now the Goths, under which name I comprehend all the Northern Mob made up of the Scum of several Nations, invaded the Empire in good earnest, and pierced into the very Bowels of it, which before they were contented to attack only in its Outskirts and remotest Provinces. This insolent Rabble of Tramontani passing the Alpes, out of a natural aversion to all Literature and Politeness, burnt and plunder'd all the Libraries that stood in their way; and as no care was taken to repair the damages which these outrageous Levellers every where committed, we ought not to wonder, that when the Building was consumed, so much of the rich Furniture happen'd to share the same Calamity, and be destroy'd along with it. The Saracens indeed, who some Ages after subdued the better part of Asia and Greece, were a fairer Enemy; As if their design had been to make an entire Conquest of Sciences and Arts, rather than of Territories and People, they encouraged the Muses; which perhaps may be one reason why more of the Greek Historians are preserved, than of the Latin, and translated Ptolomy, Euclid, and Aristotle, with most of the valuable Greek Books they could get, into the Arabic Language; by the same token that the last of these about the end of the Twelfth Century, was out of Arabic turned into Latin, upon which barbarous Version the Schoolmen afterwards built all their petifogging, litigious, Cobweb Divinity. But the Goths were not so merciful in their anger; they destroy'd Learning root and branch, and by their good will would not have left us the least remainders or footsteps of it.*

*To*

## The Translator's Preface.

To this may be added as no small cause of the loss of so many Latin Originals, the indiscreet Zeal of some over-pious Christians, who never thought their Religion secure, or out of danger, so long as any of the Monuments of Paganism were suffered to stare it in the face; for this reason they sacrificed all those Books which gave the least account of the Heathen Theology to the flames; and as 'tis impossible for an Historian to give us a full History of any Country without acquainting us with several of their Religious Rites and Ceremonies, because Livy makes frequent mention of the Roman Sacrifices, Lustrations, Processions, &c. Gregory the Great destroyed as many of his Books as had the misfortune to fall into his hands, and by doing so, imagined he did his Maker good service. I could sooner forgive him, had he taken upon him the Title of Universal Bishop which his Ambitious Brother Prelate of Constantinople then usurped; nay, had he done all the sinful unrighteous things which the worst of his Successors ever committed, than pardon him this Immoral Action of destroying the Works of Livy. In short, for I am afraid I have dwelt too long upon this Chapter; 'tis evident, that first a neglect or discouragement of Learning, then the everlasting Invasions of Barbarous Nations, really contributed to the loss of those Ancient Authors, whom now we want, especially considering that the Transcribers of those Ages could not soon enough repair the Damages which these cruel Ravagers committed in the Empire of Learning, it being  
truly

## The Translator's Preface.

truly observed of the Roman Monarchy, and the Roman Authors, that their Greatness in part occasion'd the destruction of both.

So much for the first Objection, which I confess does not affect our Attempt, as being compiled not out of one single Historian, but collected out of many. The other, as it appears to be better grounded, so it is more general, and strikes at all Abbreviations whatever. It is therefore pretended, that these sorts of Performances don't so much diffuse Learning, as they prostitute it; that as they were the Inventions of an unpolish'd Age, when people grew lazy, so they continue those habits still in the minds of men; that the generality of Mankind contenting themselves with a superficial knowledge of things, sit down satisfied with these amusements, which furnish them with matter enough for common Conversation, and by this means are hindered from making a thorough progress in Learning. To this terrible Charge it may be answer'd, That the ill use these empty Pretenders make of Abridgments, as of every thing else, does not destroy the real advantage of them, and ought by no means to stand in competition with the visible benefit that the far greater number of Readers daily reap from them. As there is no disputing against matter of Fact, 'tis certain there were never so many Abstracts or Epitomes of all sorts printed as at present; witness the great variety of Journals in all parts of Europe; and yet the Commonwealth of Learning has been so far

## The Translator's Preface.

far from receiving any prejudice or detriment from them, that it may without the least imputation of vanity be affirm'd, that all Sciences have been more universally cultivated in our Age, than in any of the preceding ones; and that these Abbreviations have not a little contributed to the farther increase and propagation of them. History is a Province of a vast extent, where an unacquainted Traveller may easily lose his way, or else be bewildred in the great variety of matter; and therefore 'tis but a charitable Office to give him a general Scheme of the Country before he actually visits it. 'Tis likewise plain that Abridgments have been successfully attempted in Mathematics. How intelligible are Tacquet, Barrow, and De Witt, in respect of Clavius's tedious Comments upon Euclid's Demonstrations? nay they have not only saved abundance of unnecessary labour, but they have made this knowledge pleasant to those who in the last Age were frighted with the difficulty of these Studies. Before I dismiss this Paragraph, I will only add, That Abridgments have been so far from mutilating any of the branches of Learning, that were it not for the assistances we derive from them, there would be so many Interruptions and Chasms, particularly in the Historical part of it, that it would prove but an uncomfortable study. How many Ecclesiastical Monuments, for instance, had been lost, if Photius the Learned Patriarch of Constantinople had not preserved them for Posterity, by throwing them into a lesser room.

I will



## The Translator's Preface.

*I will not so far abuse my Reader's patience as to enlarge upon the several Advantages deduced from History, and particularly the Roman, which of all others is the most instructive and entertaining. As it comprizes a prodigious variety of surprizing Events, the Affairs of other Nations are all along so interwoven with theirs, that what one of their own Writers said of them, is literally true, viz. That whoever reads the Actions they performed, does not so much learn the History of one single People, as that of all Mankind. And certainly 'tis a prodigious thing to consider, that a small pitiful Town, composed at first of Outlaws and Vagabonds, of different Interests, Tempers, and perhaps Principles; of so little Credit and Reputation, that their Neighbours refused to marry their Daughters to them, should surmount so many Difficulties which threated their Constitution in its very infancy; and afterwards upon a new moulding of their Government, which private Malecontents at home, and powerful Enemies abroad laboured to destroy, should by the regularity of their Military Discipline, the bravery of their Forces, and the vertue of their Inhabitants, be in a capacity make such astonishing Conquests. And though the perpetual Struggles between the People and the Senate threw the State into so many terrible Convulsions, that by all appearing Symptoms, their Commonwealth often seem'd to be in an expiring Condition; yet we find they made the haughtiest Powers*

*in*



## The Translator's Preface.

*in the Universe truckle to them, and reduced all the then inhabited World to their obedience. After this, to reflect, how by the creeping in of Avarice and Luxury, and the several Inferior Vices dependant on these, the Republic was dissolved, and forced to give way to the Emperors, under whose hands it flourished for some time, till by the frequent Revolutions made by an Insolent Army, but especially by the perpetual Irruptions of the Northern People, it was by degrees broken to pieces, all these remarkable Shiftings of the Scene, and the fresh appearance of so many new persons still upon the Theatre, must needs give a considering man not only a very agreeable, but useful entertainment.*

*I am now arrived to the last stage of my Preface, so that I have no more work left upon my hands, but only to give the Reader a short Account of the following Performance. It was compiled by a judicious Hand in France for the use of the Duke of Burgundy, and recommended to me by a Learned Gentleman here in Town, who was so taken with the newness of the Method, and the exactness of the Chronology, that he was impatient till he saw it put into an English dress. The whole is managed by way of Question and Answer, in an easie, familiar, intelligible Method, suited to persons of the meanest Capacity, but with that good order and accuracy, that the greatest Proficients in this sort of Learning may not be ashamed to refresh their Memories by perusing it. I was the more easily persuaded to undertake it, because I could never*

## The Translator's Preface.

*as yet meet any Abbreviation of the Roman History, which was not in one respect or other lame and deficient. Either the Style was incorrect, the Narration too tedious, or obscure, or the true order of time miserably neglected.*

*As for Lucius Florus, tho I confess there are abundance of things very prettily said in him, yet he so frequently interrupts the Series of the History, and is so everlasting an Affecter of pointed Sentences, to which he sacrifices the Truth without any remorse, that he is not to be depended upon. Eutropius and Aurelius Victor lived in an unpo'ite Age, and not only pass over several Important Occurrences, but commonly give a faulty account of matters of fact.*

*I cannot answer for this, that it wholly comes up to the dignity of the Subject; and indeed as it is the first undertaking of this nature that ever appear'd in public, it cannot reasonably be expected that it should be carried to its highest perfection at once; however, I may without vanity affirm, That it has been considerably improv'd in the Version, as any one that will be at the pains to compare the Translation with the Original will soon discover.*

*If it meets the favourable Reception which so useful and serviceable a Performance seems to deserve, the Translator may, perhaps, find leisure time enough hereafter for the advantage of our English Youth to put it into the Universal Language.*

# A Clear Method for the more easy understanding the *Roman* History, &c.

## The Origine of the *Romans*.

The Year of the World 2800. Before Jesus Christ 1184.

Quest. **I** Desire to know the Origine of the  
*Romans*?

Ans<sup>r</sup>. They came from *Aeneas*,  
the Son of *Anchises*, who after  
the taking of *Troy*, fled into *Italy*, and  
settled there.

Q. When did this happen?

A. In the Year 2800 of the Creation of  
the World.

Q. When *Aeneas* was in *Italy*, what did  
he there?

A. He married *Lavinia*, Daughter to *La-  
tinus*, King of the *Latins*, after he had in a  
single Combat kill'd *Turnus*, King of the *Ru-  
tu'i*, who pretended to the same Lady.

Q. Did he do nothing else?

B

A. He

*A.* He built a City there which he call'd *Lavinium*.

*Q.* Who govern'd the *Latins* after the Death of *Latinus*?

*A.* *Æneas*.

*Q.* How long did he Reign?

*A.* No more than three Years.

*Q.* Who succeeded *Æneas*?

*A.* His Son *Ascanius*, whom he had by *Cecuba*.

Before we take in hand the Succession of the Kings of Rome, 'tis in some manner necessary to give that of the Latin Kings after the Destruction of Troy, and to remember that *Æneas*, Anchises's Son, and Son-in-Law to *Latinus*, from whom the *Latins* derive their Name, was slain in a Battle Four hundred twenty six years before the Building of Rome, and that *Latinus* reign'd Thirty five Years of it.

*A Chronological Table of the Latin  
Kings.*

Kings.	Year of the World.	Reign
<i>Picus</i> Son of <i>Saturn</i>	2757	37
<i>Faunus</i>	2794	44
<i>Latinus</i> I.	2838	35
<i>Æneas</i>	2872	6
<i>Ascanius</i> Son of <i>Æneas</i>	2877	38
<i>Silvius</i> Son of <i>Ascanius</i>	2915	29
<i>Æneas Silvius</i>	2944	31
<i>Latinus</i> II.	2975	51
<i>Alba Silvius</i>	3035	39
<i>Capetus</i> I.	3064	26
<i>Capys</i>	3090	28
<i>Capetus</i> II.	3118	13
<i>Tiberinus</i>	3131	8
<i>Agrippa Silvius</i>	3139	41
<i>Alladius</i> , or <i>Aremulius</i> } <i>Silvius</i>	3180	19
<i>Aventinus Silvius</i>	3199	37
<i>Procas</i> , or <i>Palatinus Silvius</i>	3236	23
<i>Anulius Silvius</i>	3259	41
<i>Numitor.</i>	3299	2

*The Building of Rome.*

*Year of the World 3301. Before Christ 753.*

Q. **W**hen was the City of *Rome* built?  
 A. In the 3961 Year of the *Ju-  
 lian* Period. 753 before the *Christian Æra*.  
 431 after the burning of *Troy*, and of the  
*World 3301.*

Q. Which was the Capital City of the  
*Latins* then?

A. *Alba*, because *Julius* that built it,  
 made it the Seat of his Empire.

Q. What King possess'd the Throne at  
 that time.

A. *Amulius* after he had ejected his Bro-  
 ther *Numitor*.

Q. From whence was *Rome* so called?

A. From *Romulus*, who gave it his own  
 Name.

Q. Why?

A. Because his Brother *Rhemus* and he  
 having agreed, That he who saw the best  
 Augury should Name it; *Romulus* had the  
 most favourable Augury, as having seen  
 twelve Vultures, and the other only six.

*The means Romulus made use of to People his New City of Rome.*

Q. **W**hat Method did *Romulus* take to People his City?

A. He bethought himself of two expedients.

Q. What were they?

A. In the first place he open'd a Publick Sanctuary in a little Wood, which was not far from the City, where all Fugitive Slaves, Criminals, Bankrupts, and others of the same Quality found Protection.

Q. Did this Expedient take effect?

A. Ay.

Q. What did he do after this?

A. Since the *Romans* had no Women among them, and their Neighbours would not marry with them, they were obliged to have recourse to a Stratagem.

Q. How was that?

A. They published in all the Neighbouring Provinces, that at such a time they design'd to celebrate some Sports. The *Sabins* came to see the Divertisement, and brought their Wives and Daughters hither. Now when they were most intent upon beholding the Sights, *Romulus* gave the Signal, and the *Romans* immediately carried off the *Sabine* Women, and married them.

Q. *Romulus* having thus peopled his City, what did he afterwards?

A. He divided it into Thirty *Curie* or Wards, which he called *Sabin*.

Q. Did he do nothing besides?

A. He also divided his Subjects into three Orders?

Q. As how?

A. The First was that of the Senators, whom he created to the Number of a hundred, and call'd them *Patres* or Fathers, and their Children *Patricians*. The Second was that of the Knights. And the Third, that of the People.

### *The several Sorts of Government in the City of Rome.*

Q. **H**OW was *Rome* govern'd at first?

A. By Kings.

Q. How do ye call this sort of Government?

A. Monarchy.

Q. Was *Rome* always govern'd by Kings?

A. No: It became a Republick after the Expulsion of *Tarquin* the Proud, who was the Seventh King there.

Q. What do you mean by Republick?

A. That is to say, a State where several Persons command.

Q. What difference do you make between a Monarchy and a Republick?

A. A



*A.* A Monarchy is a State where only one governs in Chief. A Republick, where the Administration is lodged in many Hands.

Q. How long did this Republick continue?

*A.* It lasted in the first place, from the Consulat of *Brutus* to the Consulat of *Claudius*, which makes 245 Years; and afterwards from the Consulat of *Claudius* to the Empire of *Cesar*, which makes about as many Years more.

Q. Did *Rome* always continue a Republick?

*A.* No; it was afterwards govern'd by Emperors.

Q. What difference is there between a King, and an Emperor?

*A.* 'Tis another Name, but the Authority is almost the same.

Q. How many sorts of Government have there been in *Rome*?

*A.* Three: That of Kings, which lasted 250 Years. That of the Consuls 450. And that of the Emperors 360.

Q. How long did the *Roman* Empire continue from the first year of *Cesar*, to the tenth of *Constantine Palaeologus*, which makes up its beginning and end?

*A.* It continued a Thousand five hundred and one Year.

Q. How many Kings had they at *Rome*?

*A.* Seven, whose Names you'll see in a Table below.

Q. How many Emperors have there been in the two Empires of the *East*, and the *West*?

A. The Forty eight first possess'd it entirely. The Twelve succeeding had the Empire of the *West*, and the other Sixty three the Empire of the *East*.

### *The Seven Kings of Rome.*

*The Year of the World 3301.*

*In the Fourth Year of the Sixth Olympiad.*

*3961 of the Julian Period.*

*431 after the Taking of Troy.*

*753 before the First Year of the Christian Era.*

Kings.	Year of the World.	Reign.
1. <i>Romulus.</i>	3301	38
<i>Inter-Rexnum.</i>	3339	
2. <i>Numa Pompilius.</i>	3340	43
3. <i>Tullus Hostilius.</i>	3383	32
4. <i>Ancus Martins.</i>	3414	34
5. <i>Tarquinius Priscus.</i>	3439	39
6. <i>Servius Tullius.</i>	3477	44
7. <i>Tarquinius Superbus.</i>	3521	44

The two first Consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatinus*, govern'd in the 245th Year of *Rome*, after the Expulsion of their Kings, on the 24th of *February*. A day observ'd in their *Kalendar*.

*Romulus.*

# Romulus the First King of Rome.

Year of the World 3301.

Before Christ 753.

Q. I Desire to know something of the Birth of *Romulus* ?

A. He was the Son of *Rhea Silvia*, and supposed to be begotten by *Mars*.

Q. Who was this *Rhea Silvia* ?

A. Daughter to *Numitor*, and Neice of *Amulius*.

Q. What happen'd to this Lady ?

A. Her Uncle *Amulius* shut her up among the Vestal Virgins, that so by this means he might make her incapable of having Children, who might one day dispute the Throne he usurp'd with him.

Q. Did this Policy of his succeed ?

A. No: For this young Vestal going one day to fetch some Water in a little Wood, which the *Albans* had consecrated to *Mars*, to be employ'd in the Sacrifices of the Goddess *Vesta*, she was ravish'd by an armed Man, who pretended to be the God *Mars*.

Q. But what did *Amulius* when he saw her big with Child ?

A. He condemned her to Dye; but at the Intercession of *Antioch*, only Daughter to this Inhuman Tyrant, this Sentence was changed into perpetual Imprisonment.

Q. What befel her in this Prison ?

A. She was brought to bed of two Children?

B 5

Q. And

Q. And what happen'd to the poor Infants?

A. *Amulius* immediately commanded 'em to be thrown into the *Tiber*, in a little Wooden Basket without a cover.

Q. How were they preserved?

A. The Stream carried the two Infants to the Side of the River, and a certain Woman, call'd *Lupa*, directed thither by their Cries, took them up, and gave them Suck for some time, which occasion'd the Report that they were suckled by a She-wolf.

Q. Who took the care to bring them up?

A. One *Faustulus* by Name, the King's Shepherd, who knowing their Birth, took them from the Woman, carried them home, and gave them to his Wife *Acca Laurentia* to nurse them.

Q. When they came to age, what did they then?

A. *Faustulus* having told them who they were, they kill'd their Uncle *Amulius*.

Q. For what reason?

A. To Re-establish their Uncle *Numitor* in his Throne; and lastly, in the second Year of his Reign, they built *Rome*.

Q. What happen'd to *Rhemus*?

A. As he was jesting and ridiculing the smallness of the Ditch, which *Romulus* had caus'd to be made, and leaping over it, he was kill'd by one of the Workmen, who gave him a great Blow on the Head with a Rake.

Q. How

Q. How came *Romulus* to be King?

A. After the Death of his Brother *Rhomus*, he was own'd as King by all his Followers.

Q. What did he do when he was King?

A. He was a great Warriar, and gain'd a considerable Battle against the *Ceninians*, the *Antemnates*, and the *Crustumenians*, with whom he made War.

Q. What remarkable Performances did he do in this War?

A. He kill'd their General with his own Hand, and defeated the rest of the Army.

Q. After this Victory, what did he?

A. He entred *Rome* in a Chariot drawn by four Horses, cover'd with a Purple Robe, all the Prisoners of War marching in order before him.

Q. Did not he give them their Liberty again?

A. Yes; at the instance of the *Roman* Women, who for the most part had Relations among them.

Q. He received them afterwards into the number of his Citizens?

A. Right, and gave them the same Privileges with the rest of the *Romans*.

Q. Had *Romulus* no other War but this?

A. He maintain'd a long and cruel War against the *Sabins*, who were mightily enraged at the taking away of their Wives and Daughters.

Q. During this War, what Remarkable Action happen'd?

A. The

*A.* The *Sabins* possess themselves of the *Capitol* by the means of *Tarpeia*, who had the keeping of one of the Gates, and deliver'd it to them.

*Q.* Upon what Condition?

*A.* That they should give her the Golden Bracelets they wore on their Arms.

*Q.* And what ensued upon this?

*A.* Instead of performing this Article, they prest her to Death with the weight of their Bucklers, and cut the Garison in pieces.

*Q.* Were there not several other Combats between the *Romans* and the *Sabins*.

*A.* There was another, which had been exceeding bloody, if the *Roman Wives*, that had been carried off by force, had not thrown themselves between the two Armies, and obtain'd a Peace with their Tears.

*Q.* The *Sabins* then were toucht with Compassion at this sight.

*A.* True; both one and t'other side threw down their Arms, and swore they would never War against each other any more.

*Q.* What Agreement then did they make?

*A.* That *Rome* should be the Capital City of their Empire, and that *Romulus* and *Tatius*, King of the *Sabins*, should Reign together.

*Q.* Where did they live?

*A.* *Tatius* continued in the *Capitol* which he had Conquer'd; and *Romulus* chose *Mount-Palatine*.

*Q.* Was

*Q.* Was not the Body of the Senate augmented by *Tatius*?

*A.* He made 'em just as many more as they were before the late Articles.

*Q.* What was that Number?

*A.* Three hundred.

*Q.* Was any thing done in Honour of the Women?

*A.* They instituted the *Matronalia*, or Feast of the Matrons, which was to be celebrated Yearly.

*Q.* How do they say *Romulus* died?

*A.* We don't positively know. Some pretend that as he was haranguing his Soldiers, a Tempest arose, and he disappear'd all on the sudden; and this gave an occasion to the common belief, That he was translated among the gods.

*Q.* But which is the most probable Opinion?

*A.* That the Senators, whom he treated too imperiously, kill'd him in the midst of the Senate, so that each of them carried under his Robe some Piece of his Body, and afterwards made the People believe that he was mounted up to Heaven.

*Q.* After the Death of *Romulus*, was not the Form of Government chang'd?

*A.* Yes: For the Senate being composed of *Romans* and *Sabines*, 'twas resolved to chuse by Lots Five Persons of both Nations, who should reign five days alternatively, till such time as they could find out one that was worthy to fill the Throne.

*Q.* How

*Q.* How long did this *Interregnum* last?

*A.* A Twelvemonth.

*Q.* Was nothing done to the Honour of *Romulus*?

*A.* A Temple was built to him upon the *Quirinal* Mount, where he was ador'd under the name of *Quirinus*.

*Q.* How long did he reign?

*A.* Thirty eight Years, and was succeeded by *Numa Pompilius*.

*Numa Pompilius the Second King of Rome.*

*Year of the World* 3340.

*Of Rome* 40.

*Q.* FROM whence came *Numa Pompilius*?

*A.* From *Cures*, the Metropolis of the *Sabines*.

*Q.* How was he declared King?

*A.* Some Ambassadors went to offer him the Crown at *Cures*, where he then resided, and all in consideration of his great Piety.

*Q.* What things did he do, being arrived at *Rome*?

*A.* The first thing he did was to disband the Guards which *Romulus* had instituted for the security of his Person.

*Q.* What made him do so?

*A.* Because he said 'twas better for a Prince to make himself be lov'd than fear'd by his Subjects.

*Q.* What did he do afterwards?

*A.* He



*A.* He establish'd a certain Form of Sacrifices and Ceremonies that were to be observ'd in the Worship of their gods.

*Q.* Did he do any thing besides ?

*A.* He likewise instituted the *Pontiffs*, the *Augurs*, and the *Salian Priests*. In fine, he testified by his Laws and Actions, That nothing was more necessary in a State than Religion and Justice.

*Q.* Did not he build some Temples ?

*A.* He built one to the Honour of *Janus*, which was to be shut in the time of Peace, and open'd in War.

*Q.* Did he build any more ?

*A.* Yes: That which he consecrated to the Goddess *Vesta*, where he establish'd the *Vestal Virgins*.

*Q.* Who were these *Vestals* ?

*A.* Certain Virgins that were chosen about the Age of Four or Five Years, out of the Noblest Families in *Rome*, to be Priestesses of the Goddess *Vesta*.

*Q.* What was their Employment ?

*A.* To look after the Holy Fire which burn'd incessantly upon an Altar, and was a Symbol or Character of the Divinity they ador'd.

*Q.* What Punishment was assign'd for those *Vestals* that let the Holy Fire go out ?

*A.* They were interr'd alive and treated after the very same manner with those which violated their Chastity, to which they were obliged.

*Q.* Did

Q. Did *Numa Pompilius* do any thing remarkable besides this?

A. He divided the Year into Twelve Months, whereas *Romulus* had only instituted Ten. In short, he establish'd several other Laws, which he said he received from the Goddess *Ageria*.

Q. What manner of death died he?

A. He died of an Indisposition, being Fourscore years old, after a Reign of 43 Years, which he pass'd in a profound Peace.

Q. Had he any Children?

A. He had four Sons, none of which succeeded him in the Crown, but made four Illustrious Families in *Rome*.

Q. Had he no Daughters?

A. He had one call'd *Pompilia*, who was married to a *Sabine* Nobleman, whose name was *Martius*.

Q. Who was Successor to *Numa Pompilius*?

A. *Tullus Hostilius*.

### **Tullus Hostilius, Third King of Rome.**

*Year of the World* 3383.      *Of Rome* 83.

Q. I Would be inform'd of what Family was *Tullus Hostilius*?

A. He was Grandson to *Tullus Hostilius*, who was kill'd in endeavouring to retake the Capitol; and was elected by the *Romans* for his Heroick Actions.

Q. What

Q. What remarkable thing did he in the beginning of his Reign ?

A. 'Twas he who first taught the *Romans* Military Discipline, and the Art of fighting regularly.

Q. Did he do nothing else ?

A. He distributed among the ordinary sort of people all the Demcan which the Kings before him kept in their own hands, and reserv'd no more for himself than what he had when he was but a private Person.

Q. What considerable things happened in his Reign ?

A. The famous Combat between the *Horatii* and *Curiatii*.

Q. Pray recount to me how that was managed.

A. The *Romans* and *Albans* being willing to put a speedy Conclusion to the War, which had lasted a long while, 'twas resolv'd on both sides to chuse out Three men to fight for their Countrey.

Q. And what were the Conditions ?

A. If the Three *Albans* were vanquished, *Alba* was to submit it self to the Government of the *Romans* : On the other hand, if the *Roman* Champions were beaten, then *Rome* must do the like to *Alba*.

Q. Who were pitch'd upon for this Exploit ?

A. The *Romans* chose the Three *Horatii*, Brothers ; and the *Albans* the Three *Curiatii*, who were Three Brothers likewise.

Q. What

Q. What was the Success of the Combat?

A. The Three *Curatii* were at first wounded, and Two of the *Horatii* slain.

Q. The Third *Horatius* being left to fight the other Three, what became of him?

A. He pretended to fly for't; and as the *Curatii* eagerly pursued him, he faced about, and killed 'em one after another.

Q. Did he not soon tarnish the Glory of this Illustrious Action?

A. Yes.

Q. As how?

A. By murdering his own Sister.

Q. What instigated him to do that?

A. Returning Victorious, and meeting his Sister in Tears for one of the *Curatii*, who was promis'd her in Marriage, he run her through with his Sword.

Q. Was he punish'd for this Crime?

A. No; his late Victory excus'd him.

Q. The *Romans* being thus Conquerors, what did *Tullus* after this?

A. He ordered the City of *Alba* to be raz'd to the ground, and commanded the *Albans* to come and live at *Rome* with their King *Metius Suffetius*.

Q. What became of that King?

A. He was sometime after ty'd to the Tails of four Horses. and torn in pieces.

Q. For what Misdemeanor was so severe a Punishment inflicted on him?

A. For forming a Conspiracy to make himself Master of *Rome*; and betraying the  
*Romans*,

*Romans*, in not sending them the Assistance he was obliged to give them.

Q. After what manner died *Tullus Hostilius* ?

A. He and his whole Family were burnt by Lightning which set his Palace on fire.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. Thirty two Years.

Q. Who succeeded him ?

A. *Ancus Martius*, who resembled *Numa Pompilius* as well for his Justice as his Piety.

*Ancus Martius, Fourth King of Rome.*

*Year of the World 3414. Of Rome 114.*

Q. OF whom was *Ancus Martius* descended ?

A. He was the Son of *Pompilia*, and Grandson to *Numa Pompilius*.

Q. What particular things did *Ancus Martius* do ?

A. Nothing, if we except his inclosing Mount *Aventine*, and the *Janiculum* within the City, and building New Walls about it, and laying the Foundation of the City *Ostia* at the mouth of the *Tiber*.

Q. Had he no Wars at all ?

A. He had one with the *Latins*, whom he defeated in several Battels.

Q. How died he ?

A. Of a Sickness in the Twenty fourth Year of his Reign.

Q. How

Q. How many Children had he?

A. He had Two, whom he left under the Care of *Tarquinius Priscus*, who took away the Kingdom from them, and got himself to be declared King of *Rome*.

Q. It was then this *Tarquinius Priscus* that succeeded him?

A. Yes.

### *Tarquinius Priscus, Fifth King of Rome.*

*Year of the World 3439. Of Rome 139.*

Q. From whence came *Tarquinius Priscus*?

A. He was originally of *Corinth*, and Son to a Rich Merchant whose name was *Demaratus*.

Q. How came he to be raised to this Dignity?

A. Under the Reign of *Ancus Martius* he quitted the City of the *Tarquins* to seek his Fortune at *Rome*, which it seems answered his Ambition.

Q. What happened to him in his Journey thither?

A. As he came near the City an Eagle lighted and took off his Bonnet, and soon after placed it on his Head again. *Tanaquil* told him, That this lucky Omen promis'd him the Regal Authority.

Q. Why

the way to  
Q. Why quitted he his former name *Lucumon* to take that of *Tarquinius*?

A. In remembrance of the City of the *Tarquins*, where he was born?

Q. How got he himself declared King?

A. After the Death of *Ancus Martius* he assembled the Senators and People, and being supported by his Friends, and those whom he had gain'd to his Party by Money, he put in for the Crown, and managed his Affairs so dexterously, that he obtain'd it without any difficulty.

Q. What did he do to secure himself in his new Kingdom?

A. He augmented the Senate with a hundred Senators, and enlarg'd the Authority of that August Body. He likewise added Three hundred new Members to the Order of the Knights, which was their number before.

Q. What other things were done by him in particular?

A. He order'd a Bundle of Rods bound up together, with an Axe in the midst, to be carried before the Magistrates. He regulated the Stuff and Fashion of the Robes that were to be worn by the Kings and Augurs; and commanded the Chairs of the Senators to be made of Ivory.

Q. What did he do besides all this?

A. He regulated the Habits which were to distinguish the Knights from others that served in the Wars, and enjoined them to wear  
Golden

Golden Rings on their Fingers. Then to distinguish the Children of Illustrious Families, he order'd them to wear long Robes border'd with Purple.

Q. Did he undertake any considerable Building ?

A. He built the *Circus*, between Mount *Palatine* and Mount *Aventine*, to have there represented the Combats of Gladiators, and of Beasts, or any other Diversions of the like nature, that deriv'd their name from thence.

Q. What was remarkable in his Reign ?

A. That he was the first that wore a Crown and a Sceptre, with the other Marks of the Regal Dignity.

Q. What other remarkable Passages have you ?

A. Being one day minded to try *Atius Navius*, President of the *Augurs*, he asked him, Whether what he thought of in his mind was possible to be done, or no ?

Q. What Answer did *Atius* return him ?

A. After having consulted the Birds, he positively told him it was. Why, says the King, I was thinking whether I was able to cut this Whetstone with a Razor. That you are, reply'd the *Augur* ; and at the same time the King accordingly cut it.

Q. Did not this give a mighty Reputation to the *Augurs* ?

A. Yes ; for from that time the *Romans* never began any Enterprize without consulting them.

Q. What



Q. What did *Tarquin* do besides, to make himself recommendable ?

A. He extinguish'd the Name of the *Latins* through all *Italy*, having possessed himself of most of their Cities.

Q. What Misfortunes befel him ?

A. He was slain by Two Peasants that were bribed to do it by the Children of *An-  
cus Martius*.

Q. Why did they get him to be assassinated ?

A. Because they were angry to see him elevated to the Throne to their prejudice.

Q. How old was he when they slew him ?

A. Eighty four years old, and reigned Thirty eight of them.

Q. How many Children did he leave behind him ?

A. He left Two, whom he placed under the Care of *Servius Tullius*.

Q. Who succeeded *Tarquin* ?

A. The above-mentioned *Servius Tullius*.

*Servius Tullius, Sixth King of Rome.*

*The Year of the World 3477. Of Rome 177.*

Q. **F**ROM what sort of Parents was *Servius Tullius* descended ?

A. He was Son to the Prince of *Cornicula*, a small City which *Tarquin* had taken in the Province of the *Latins*.

Q. What Adventures happen'd to them ?

A. His

*A.* His Father was kill'd at *Corinth*; and his Mother, who was then big of him, was carried Prisoner to *Rome*, where *Tanaquil* the Wife of *Tarquin* took an affection to her, and lodg'd her in the Palace, where she was delivered of *Servius Tullius*.

*Q.* What happen'd at his Birth?

*A.* 'Twas remarkable, that lying in his Cradle a Lambent Flame play'd about his head for above the space of an hour, and did him not the least Injury.

*Q.* What did *Tanaquil*, who was particularly well skill'd in Divination, believe of this Prodigy?

*A.* She was of Opinion that it promis'd the Kingdom to this Infant, and after that time took great care of his Education, and gave him her Daughter in Marriage.

*Q.* How came he to be proclaim'd King?

*A.* *Servius* being Son-in-Law to *Tarquin*, and having the Management of all Affairs in his own hands at the time of his death, he behaved himself, by the Queen's Assistance, so well in this place, that he was elected and proclaimed King by the People, some time after the Death of that Prince.

*Q.* What remarkable things does History tell of him?

*A.* Having vanquish'd the *Tuscan*s and the *Vejentes*, he exceedingly augmented the City of *Rome*, added the *Quirinal*, *Viminal*, and the *Exquiline* Hill to it, and encompassed it with Walls and Ditches.

*Q.* What

*Q* What other Actions are related of him ?

*A.* He was the first that took a Survey of the *Roman* Citizens, and valued every man's Estate to tax him proportionably to his Income, that so his Troops might be better accommodated.

*Q* How often was this done ?

*A.* Once in Five Years.

*Q* How was this space of time call'd ?

*A.* A *Lustrum*.

*Q* How many Children had he ?

*A.* Two, whose Names were *Tullia*.

*Q* What sort of Inclinations had they ?

*A.* The Eldest was of a sweet agreeable Temper : The Youngest, Fiery and Ambitious.

*Q* Whom did they marry ?

*A.* The two *Tarquins*, Brothers-in-Law or Nephews to *Servius*.

*Q* How came they to marry them ?

*A.* *Tullius* apprehending that these *Tarquins* the Sons or Grandsons of *Tarquinius Priscus* would shock him in his Throne, thought the best way to secure them in his Interests, would be to bestow his Eldest Daughter upon the Elder *Tarquin*, who was naturally Ambitious and Violent ; and his Youngest upon the other, whose name was *Aruns*, who had as much Moderation as his Brother had Heat and Passion.

*Q* What was the Consequence of these Marriages ?

C

*A.* As

*A.* As these things were wholly managed by a Principle of Policy, and *Servius* had no regard to the different Characters and Dispositions of the married Couple, he was the occasion that *Tarquin*, who liked not the too gentle humour of his Wife, entred into a strict Correspondence with his Sister-in-Law, and debauch'd her.

*Q.* I desire to know the Result of this Correspondence.

*A.* *Tarquin* murder'd his own Wife, and the Youngest Sister poison'd her Husband.

*Q.* Why did she do so?

*A.* To put her in a capacity to marry her Brother-in-Law, and take away the Crown from her Father.

*Q.* How came *Tarquin* to be declared King?

*A.* Suffering himself to be over-persuaded by *Tullia*, who told him he must turn the old Gentleman out of his Kingdom without waiting for his Death, he summons the Senators to tell them he was minded to reign?

*Q.* What happen'd upon this?

*A.* He placed himself on the Seat where the Kings were accusom'd to sit, and began to call his Father-in-Law *Servius* an Usurper.

*Q.* And what became of *Servius*?

*A.* This making a great noise in the Senate, the King came to know the reason of it: *Tarquin* immediately raising himself from his Seat, he laid hold of him, and throwing him down stairs, order'd the Soldiers to assassinate him.

*Q.* After

*Q.* After this Murder, how did *Tullia* manage her self?

*A.* Being inform'd that *Tarquin* was owned for King, she immediately got her Chariot ready to go and congratulate him; and as she came to the street where the Body of her Father lay a-cross the way, the Coachman going to turn back and pass some other way, this Unnatural Fury would not suffer such a delay, but bid him drive on, and pass over the Body of her Father, that was all bloody.

*Q.* How long did *Servius Tullius* reign?

*A.* Forty four years.

*Q.* Who succeeded him?

*A.* *Tarquin* the Proud.

### *Tarquinius Superbus, Seventh King of Rome.*

*Year of the World* 3521.      *Of Rome* 221.

*I* desire to be inform'd particularly of the Birth of *Tarquin*.

*A.* Some Historians tell us he was the Son of *Tarquinius Priscus*, but others are of opinion he was only his Grandson.

*Q.* How did he govern his Kingdom?

*A.* 'Twas after the Death of *Servius*, whom he caused to be assassinated, that he seized upon the Kingdom, and behaved himself with all imaginable Arrogance and Cruelty.

Q. Why was he firnam'd *Superbus* ?

A. From the Insolence of his Temper.

Q. What did he do when he was made King ?

A. He despis'd the Authority of the Senate, and frequently put to death, or banish'd, or imprison'd the Senators and chief men of the City, upon false Reports and Accusations.

Q. What remarkable things did he do ?

A. He defeated the *Volsicians* by Force of Arms, but made himself Master of *Gabii* by Treachery.

Q. How was that managed ?

A. He pretended to fall out with his Son *Sextus*, in the presence of most of his Captains ; nay, his Passion was carried on so far, that he was going to strike him.

Q. What does *Sextus* upon this ?

A. Away he flies, and sends to the *Gabians* to beg the Protection of their City against the barbarous Treatment of an Unnatural Father.

Q. And did the Inhabitants receive him ?

A. Yes : And he knew so well how to establish himself in their good Opinion by fighting for them, that they made him their General, and Governor of the Town.

Q. When *Sextus* found himself in a condition to do what he pleased, what did he then ?

A. He dispatches one Messenger only to his Father, as they had agreed before.

Q. What

Q. What Message was the fellow intrusted with ?

A. With nothing but Compliments.

Q. What does *Tarquin* ?

A. He carries him into his Garden, and in his presence knocks off the Heads of all the highest Poppies.

Q. Without doubt *Sextus* understood well enough his Father's meaning.

A. Right : He struck off the Heads of the principal men among the *Gabians* ; some he imprison'd, others he accus'd of Treason, to find a pretext to condemn, and so make them incapable of doing him any Injury.

Q. What Disgrace happen'd afterwards to *Tarquin* ?

A. His Reign daily becoming more and more odious to the *Romans*, they took his Crown from him, and turn'd him with his whole Family out of the City, for a certain Crime committed by his Son.

Q. What was that ?

A. *Sextus*, who imagin'd that his High Birth would carry him out in every thing, having beheld *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatinus*, he was struck with her Beauty ; but as he could not hope to satisfy his Passion easily, ( for besides that she was a Lady of the severest Virtue imaginable, she was married to a Prince of the Royal Family ), he was resolv'd to ravish her.

Q. How was that effected ?

A. In the night time he enters her Chamber,

ber, claps his Dagger to her Breast, and threaten'd to kill her, if she did not comply with his Desires.

*Q.* These Menaces, did they affright her?

*A.* No.

*Q.* What did *Sextus* then to accomplish his Intentions?

*A.* Seeing nothing was able to move this Illustrious Lady, he tells her, That after he had killed her, he would kill her Slave likewise, and leave him in her Bed, and then publish abroad, that he kill'd them both in the Act of Adultery.

*Q.* Then this Consideration prevail'd with her.

*A.* Yes : For she rather chose to surrender her Body to the Passion of *Sextus*, than suffer her Memory to be dishonoured by so black a Calumny.

*Q.* What did she after this?

*A.* After she had shown this weakness, she hides a Dagger under her Gown, and sends to find out her Husband *Collatinus*, her Brother *Lucretius*, and her Cousin *Brutus*, who were encamp'd before *Ardea* : She complained to them of the Brutal Action of this libidinous Prince, begg'd them to revenge the Injury done to her ; and immediately drawing out the Dagger from under her Gown, she struck it into her Belly, being resolved not to survive the Loss of her Honour.

*Q.* What



Q. What did *Brutus* do after she was dead?

A. He draws the bloody Dagger out of *Lucretia's* Wound, and swore by her Chaste Blood, That he would chase *Tarquin* and all his guilty Family out of *Rome*.

Q. How long did *Tarquin* reign?

A. Twenty four Years.

Q. Where dy'd he?

A. In *Tuscany*, after having made several Efforts in vain to re-possess himself of *Rome*.

### *Of the Alteration in the State of Rome.*

Year of the World 3545. Of Rome 245.

Q. A Fter *Tarquin* was turn'd out of *Rome* by *Brutus*, by whom was the City govern'd?

A. By Consuls.

Q. When began this Government?

A. 245 Years after the Foundation of *Rome*, and 510 before the Birth of *Jesus Christ*.

Q. What were these Consuls?

A. Certain Magistrates, in whose hands the Sovereign Authority was lodged for a Year only.

Q. What was their Office?

A. To command the Armies.

Q. Who were the two first Consuls?

A. *Brutus* and *Collatinus*.

*Q.* Was not the Consulate taken away from *Collatinus* ?

*A.* Yes.

*Q.* Wherefore ?

*A.* Because he carried the Name of *Tarquin*, which was odious to the People.

*Q.* Whom did they put in his place ?

*A.* *Valerius Publicola*.

*Q.* What is remarkable of *Brutus* ?

*A.* That he for a long time counterfeited the Madman, to avoid *Tarquin's* Cruelty, who had put to death *Marcus Junius* his Father, and his Brother, with several more of the Senators.

*Q.* What did he do besides this, worthy of remembrance ?

*A.* He lov'd his Country so intirely, that he beheaded two of his Sons for conspiring against the Republick.

*Q.* By whom was that Conspiracy carried on ?

*A.* By the Deputies whom *Tarquin* had dispatch'd to *Rome*, to negotiate the Affair of his Restoration.

*Q.* Where did *Brutus* dye ?

*A.* He lost his life soon after, fighting with *Aruns* the Son of *Tarquin*, in a Battel against those of *Tarquin's* Party, and the *Vejentes* who espous'd his Quarrel.

*Q.* What happen'd to 'em in this Duel ?

*A.* They ran one another through with their Lances.

*The Wars which the Romans were oblig'd to maintain.*

THE *Hetruscan War.*  
 The War of the *Latins.*  
 The War of the *Volscians.*  
 The War of the *Veientes.*  
 The War of the *Gauls.*  
 The Second War of the *Latins.*  
 The War of the *Samnites.*  
 The War of the *Tarentines.*  
 The first *Punic War.*  
 The second *Punic War.*  
 The War of *Antiochus.*  
 The War of *Macedonia.*  
 The third *Punic War.*  
 The War of *Corinth.*  
 The War of *Portugal.*  
 The War of *Numantia.*  
 The War of the *Slaves.*  
 The War of *Jugurtha.*  
 The War of *Mithridates.*

Q. Besides these, had they no *Civil Wars*?

A. Yes; they had two; the first between *Marius* and *Sylla*; and the second between *Cesar* and *Pompey*. 'Tis true, there were several *Seditions*, which shall be recounted in their proper place.

Q. For what reason did the *Romans* undertake all these Wars?

C 5

A. To

*A.* To defend their Liberty, preserve their Limits, protect their Allies, and enlarge their Empire.

### *The War of Etruria.*

*The Year of the World 3547.*

*Of Rome 247.*

*Q.* Which was the first War that the Romans were engaged in, after the Expulsion of their Kings?

*A.* That of *Etruria*.

*Q.* How did it begin?

*A.* *Porfennz*, King of that Countrey; being resolved to support *Tarquin's* Party, came to besiege *Rome* with a powerful Army.

*Q.* How was it ended?

*A.* By the Valour of *Horatius Cocles*, and *Mutius Scaevola's* Bravery, which so effectually daunted him, that he sent Deputies to the Romans to offer them Peace.

*Q.* How many Hostages did they give him?

*A.* Twenty young Ladies of the greatest Beauty and Quality in the City.

*Q.* What remarkable Action was it that *Horatius Cocles* perform'd?

*A.* He alone sustain'd for some time the Fury of the Enemies, who would have pass'd the Bridge to enter the City; and at last when it was broken down, he threw himself into the *Tiber*, and swam cross it, without abandoning his Arms all this while.

*Q.* And

*Q.* And *Mutius Scaevola's* Action, how was that?

*A.* He privately stole into the Enemies Camp, with a design to kill the King, but fail'd in his Attempt, for he mistook the King's Secretary for the King himself.

*Q.* What did they do to *Scaevola* after this unfortunate Disappointment?

*A.* He was taken and brought before *Porfenna*.

*Q.* And after what manner did he behave himself there?

*A.* He puts his criminal Right hand which committed the mistake, into a Fire which happen'd to be there: And know, says he to the King, that Three hundred of us young Roman Gentlemen have conspir'd your Death.

*Q.* What effects did so resolute an Action produce?

*A.* *Porfenna*, affrighted at the Hardiness and Resolution of the *Romans*, offered them a Peace, and accepted of the above-mention'd Ladies by way of Hostages.

*Q.* What happen'd upon that?

*A.* *Clelia*, who was one of the Twenty that were given in Hostage to *Porfenna*, having slip't from her Guards, swims over the *Tiber* on Horseback, and came back to *Rome*.

*Q.* What did they do to her when she was arriv'd there?

*A.* The Consul fearing lest the world would accuse him of Infidelity, was for surrendering

rendring her into *Porfenna's* hands, who sent her honourably back again to *Rome*, with some other young *Romans*, and made a Peace.

### *The War of the Latins.*

*The Year of the World 3555. Of Rome 255.*

Q. Which was the Second War that the *Romans* were obliged to sustain?

A. That of the *Latins*, who took up Arms at the Instigation of *Manlius*, Son-in-Law to *Tarquin*.

Q. And after what manner did it end?

A. A bloody Battel that was fought near the Lake of *Regilus*, soon put an end to it.

Q. Who were the Generals of the two Armies?

A. *Manlius* was at the Head of the *Latins*, and *Aulus Posthumius* commanded the *Romans*?

Q. Which side gain'd the Victory?

A. 'Twas in suspence for some time, but at last it declar'd it self in favour of the *Romans*.

Q. How many Men were kill'd upon the spot?

A. There were Forty thousand Men slain in the Action: Thirty four thousand of the *Latins*, in which number was *Manlius*: And Six thousand of the *Romans*. After the Death of *Manlius*, the *Tarquins* lost all hopes of being ever restor'd.

*The War of the Volscians.**The Year of the World 3559. Of Rome 259.*

Q. Which was the Third War the Romans had?

A. That of the *Volscians*, and the *Æqui*.

Q. Why did they declare War against those People?

A. Because they continually disturbed, and annoy'd the *Romans*.

Q. When did this War begin?

A. In the Year of *Rome* 259, and it lasted for several Years

Q. By whom were the *Volscians* defeated?

A. By *Quintus Cincinnatus*, who after he had perform'd many Glorious Exploits formerly, retir'd to his Country house, where he lived quietly, Tilling his Ground, and now was taken from the Plough to be made Dictator.

Q. What memorable things did he do?

A. By his Valour he sav'd the Army commanded by the Consul *Marcus Minutius*, which was surrounded by the Enemy.

Q. After this Expedition, what became of *Cincinnatus*?

A. He peaceably return'd to his old Employments at his Country-house.

Q. What other remarkable Things happen'd during this War?

A. The

A. The Adventures of *Coriolanus*.

Q. Who was this *Coriolanus*?

A. He was a Roman Gentleman, whose Name was *Martius*.

Q. Who gave him then the Sir-name of *Coriolanus*?

A. The Consul *Martius*, for having perform'd wonders at the taking of *Corioli*.

Q. What befel him?

A. He was condemn'd to Banishment in the Year of Rome 263.

Q. Upon what account?

A. For having spoken contemptibly of the Tribunes.

Q. Whether fled he?

A. To the *Volscians*, as being the most inveterate Enemies to the *Romans*, and consequently the fittest to execute his Revenge.

Q. What did he among the *Volscians*?

A. He engag'd them to renew the War with the *Romans* in the Year 263.

Q. Did he command their Troops?

A. The *Volscians* chose him for their General with *Tullius Accius*, who at that time Commanded them.

Q. And what famous Exploits did he perform?

A. He signalized himself in several Encounters, wherein he always defeated the *Romans*.

Q. Did he always take the same advantage over the *Romans*?

A. No.



*A.* No ; for being encamp'd near the Gates of the City with a design to besiege it, vanquish'd by the Prayers and Tears of his Mother *Veturia*, and his Wife *Volumnia*, whom the Senate deputed to go and intercede with him, he abandon'd his Enterprize, and drew the Army off in the Year 266.

*Q.* And what was done by way of Recompence to so fortunate a Mediation ?

*A.* They built a Temple, which was consecrated to the Fortune of the Women.

*Q.* What was the end of *Coriolanus* ?

*A.* *Accius* becoming Jealous of him, order'd him to be assassinated by ten or a dozen Villains, who accused him of Treason.

*Q.* Had the *Volsicians* any other Wars but what are already mention'd ?

*A.* Yes ; but the Death of *Coriolanus* occasion'd their Ruin, for they were intirely defeated in a famous Battel by *Spurius Cassius*.

*Q.* After all these Conquests, did this *Spurius Cassius* enjoy himself long ?

*A.* No ; for three Years after he was thrown headlong from the *Tarpeian* Rock.

*Q.* How came this misfortune to befall him ?

*A.* Because he was accused of a design to get himself declared King. 'Twas he, who was Author of the \* *Lex Agraria*, in the Year 268.

---

\* *A Law that respected the Division of Fields.*

*The War of the Veientes.*

*The Year of the World 3571. Of Rome 271.*

*Q.* **W**hen began the War of the *Veientes*?

*A.* In the year of *Rome* 271.

*Q.* Who declared it against them?

*A.* The *Fabians*.

*Q.* How came that about?

*A.* The Family of the *Fabians* begg'd of the People of *Rome* to leave the Management of the War to their care, and they would undertake it at their own Expence.

*Q.* How many were there of this Illustrious Name?

*A.* Three hundred.

*Q.* And how came they off?

*A.* After having frequently defeated their Enemies, they unluckily fell at last into an Ambuscade, which the *Veientes* had prepar'd for them, and by this means the *Fabians* were wholly cut off in the Year of *Rome* 277.

*Q.* Near what place did this defeat befall them.

*A.* Near the River *Cremera*, and the Gate through which this Honourable Family sallied out of *Rome*, was call'd the *Scelerata*, or wicked.

*Q.* Had the *Veientes* always such Success?

*A.* No,

A. No, for the Year following the Consul *Servilius* put an end to this War by an overthrow he gave them.

Q. Did not he put an end to other Wars besides this?

A. He had frequent Rencounters with the *Volsicians*, who were often beaten, and particularly by *Quintus Capitolinus*.

Q. What other considerable Actions did *Capitolinus* perform?

A. In the Year 286, he took *Antium*, the Capital City of the *Volsicians*.

Q. Did he do nothing else?

A. Ten years after the Taking of this City, being call'd from his Country-seat, where he employ'd himself in cultivating his own Grounds, he was created Dictator, and in that Quality overcame the *Aequi*, and made them first pass \* under the Yoak.

Q. By whom was the City of the *Veientes* taken?

A. By *Camillus*, the Dictator, after a Siege of Ten years continuance, in the Year of Rome 358.

Q. By what means did he take it?

A. By undermining it.

Q. What particular Passages happen'd at this Siege?

A. The Soldiers were resolved not to return home till they made themselves Masters

---

\* A Ceremony the Romans had of using their Enemies after they had conquer'd them.

of the Place, and bound themselves by a solemn Oath to observe it. And this was the first time that they began to pass the *Winter* under Tents.

Q. This same *Camillus*, did not he Signalize his Valour upon other occasions?

A. He brought the *Fidenates* into Subjection, and the City of *Falisci*, but by a very generous Action.

Q. How was that, I pray?

A. A School-Master put the most considerable Children for their Birth in the Town, into his Hands, expecting to get a mighty Reward for his pains; but *Camillus* order'd him to be stript stark naked, and so to be soundly whipt from his Camp to the City, whither he sent him with all his Boys.

### *The War of the Gauls.*

*The Year of the World 3663. Of Rome 363.*

Q **W**hen began the War of the Gauls?

A. In the Year of Rome 363.

Q. Where did it first break out?

A. Having entred *Italy*, to the number of above a Hundred thousand Men, out of an Expectation of finding a mighty booty there, they first besieged *Cusium*.

Q. Did not the *Romans* take the part of the *Clusians* their Allies?

A. Yes,

*A.* Yes, they sent Ambassadors to the *Gauls*, who instead of hearkning to them, rais'd the Siege of *Clusium*, and marched directly to *Rome*.

*Q.* What did the *Romans* do when they heard of their March?

*A.* They sent *Fabius* the Consul to oppose their coming with a powerful Army.

*Q.* And did a Fight hereupon ensue?

*A.* A most bloody Battel was fought near the River *Allia*, where the *Roman* Army was intirely defeated.

*Q.* And what did the *Gauls* after this terrible Conquest?

*A.* They immediately entred the City of *Rome*, finding the Gates open, and the Place abandon'd.

*Q.* And how did the *Gauls* behave themselves, being now Masters of the Town?

*A.* They effectually plunder'd it, and coming into the Senate-house, massacred all the Senators, and afterwards burnt the whole City down to the ground.

*Q.* What did they besides?

*A.* After all this Ravaging and Desolation, *Brennus* who commanded the *Gauls*, besieged the *Capitol*, whither the *Roman* Youth retired with *Manlius*.

*Q.* How long did this Siege continue?

*A.* Six whole months, after which *Brennus* order'd a great number of Ladders to be made, designing to attempt the Scalade of it in the Night.

*Q.* And

Q. And did his design take effect?

A. It had certainly succeeded, if *Manlius* and the rest of the besieged had not been awaken'd by the noise of some Geese in the Garison, and beaten back the *Gauls* that were already got upon the Ramperts, and thrown down headlong those that were upon the Ladders.

Q. Did the *Gauls* abandon the Place upon this?

A. No; they hoped to carry it at last by Famine, but *Manlius* perceiving their Design, threw abundance of Loaves into their Camp, to let him see they were not straitned for Provisions.

Q. Were they not weary of so long a Siege?

A. Right, and sent to tell the Besieged, they would draw off and leave their City, provided they would give them a thousand pounds of Gold.

Q. Did any remarkable Accident happen during this Capitulation?

A. *Camilius*, who had been banished some time ago, and recall'd with all speed to come to the Relief of the City, arrived thither at the Head of Forty thousand men, whom he had pick'd up in his March, beats the *Gauls* out of *Rome*, and afterwards pursuing them for two or three Leagues, gives them an entire defeat.

Q. What does he after this Victory?

A. He

*A.* He returns to *Rome* in Triumph, and stops the People who would have fain gone to live at *Veii*, because *Rome* was all burnt down, with such powerful Arguments, that he perswades them to remove the Rubbish, clear the Ruins, and build a new City.

Q. How long was it Re-building?

*A.* Not above an Year.

Q. And how was this War ended at last?

*A.* After, the *Gauls* were wholly defeated by *Manlius* and *Dolabella*.

Q. How happen'd the Death of *Manlius*, whom they Sir-nam'd *Capitolinus*?

*A.* 'Twas after his having defended the *Capitol*, and intriguing to make himself King, that he was thrown headlong from the top of that very *Capitol*, which he had defended with so much Gallantry.

Q. What memorable Passage fell out in the Year 393 of the Building of the City.

*A.* A Gulf appeared in the midst of the publick Place, which they could fill up by no manner of means.

Q. Were not the Augurs consulted upon this?

*A.* Yes.

Q. And what an Answer did they return?

*A.* That it would never close again till the most precious thing in *Rome* was thrown into it.

Q. And what Method did they take?

*A.* At the very time, when they were most perplexed to find out this precious thing,

thing, *Marcus Curtius* mounts his Horse, leaps into it all armed as he was, and the Gulf immediately closed up.

### *The War of the Latins.*

*The Year of the World 3714. Of Rome 414.*

Q. **W**Ho declared War against the *Latins*?

A. The *Romans* did in the Year of *Rome* 414.

Q. Wherefore did the *Romans* declare War against them?

A. Because they pretended to have a Right to the Privileges of *Roman* Citizens, a share in the Government, and bearing of all Offices.

Q. What remarkable things happen'd in the Course of this War?

A. The first is, That a Young Gentleman of the *Latins* singling himself out of the Army, to Challenge any *Roman* to Fight him; young *Manlius*, Son to *Manlius Torquatus* the Consul, rides up to him, fights him, and kills him.

Q. And what Reward had *Manlius* for so brave an Action?

A. But a sorry one; for his Father order'd his Head to be struck off before the whole Army, for having violated the Military Discipline.

Q. What were these Orders?

A. The



*A.* The Consuls had issued out an express Prohibition for any one to quit his Post, till the Signal for the Battel was given.

Q. What was the second Remarkable Thing?

*A.* 'Tis this; *Decius*, the Consul, devoted himself for his Country, by running into the midst of the Enemies.

### *The War against the Samnites.*

*The Year of the World 3711. Of Rome 411.*

Q. **W**hen did the war against the *Samnites* begin?

*A.* In the Year of *Rome* 411.

Q. Why did the *Romans* declare War against them?

*A.* 'Twas at the Request of the *Campanians*, who had put themselves under the protection of the *Romans*.

Q. How long did this War continue?

*A.* It lasted Fifty years.

Q. What Accidents of Note happen'd in this Interval.

*A.* Two things that deserve to be remark'd. The first is, that the *Samnites* finding themselves not strong enough to Engage the *Romans* by force of Arms, were oblig'd to have recourse to an Artifice.

Q. Tell me how it was manag'd?

*A.* They chose Ten of the Craftiest Soldiers out of the Army, and apparell'd them like  
Shepherds

Shepherds, then they gave each of them a small Flock of Sheep, and having instructed them in all they were to do, posted them on the Road where the *Roman* Army was to pass.

*Q.* Well, and what did these Shepherds do so merrily burlesqu'd ?

*A.* Being in their respective places, they were met by the Van-Couriers of the Army.

*Q.* And what Questions did they ask them ?

*A.* Whether they knew where the Army of the *Samnites* was gone.

*Q.* What answers did these counterfeit Shepherds return ?

*A.* That they had actually besieged *Luceria*.

*Q.* Upon this Advice what did the *Romans* do ?

*A.* 'Twas resolv'd to march to the Relief of this City, because it was a place of great Importance to them.

*Q.* And what followed upon that Resolution ?

*A.* The Army of the *Romans* being shut up in the Defiles through which they must of necessity pass before they could reach this place, the *Samnites* fell vigorously upon them, plunder'd them of all their Arms, and made them pass under the Yoke.

*Q.* Did not the *Romans* soon after revenge this Affront ?

*A.* Yes;

*A.* Yes ; for some time after , *Fabius* and *Papyrius* defeated the *Samnites* intirely.

*Q.* Which is the second thing that is to be remark'd ?

*A.* That young *Decius* in a Battel against the *Samnites*, and the *Gauls* who had join'd them, perform'd the same that his Father had done upon a like occasion, that is to say, he devoted himself to Death , and flung himself into the midst of his Enemies.

### *The War against the Tarentines.*

*The Year of the World 3772. Of Rome 472.*

*Q.* **W**Hy did the *Romans* make War upon the *Tarentines* ?

*A.* Because they pillag'd a Fleet belonging to the People of *Rome*, and ill treated the Ambassadors that were sent to complain of this Injury.

*Q.* When was the War declared against them ?

*A.* In the Year 472, and with that Success, that *L. Æmilius Barbula* defeated them, together with the *Samnites* and *Salentines* that came to their Assistance.

*Q.* And what Shifts did this overthrow put them upon ?

*A.* It obliged them to beg Relief of *Pyrrhus* in the Year 474, who Transported a vast Army into *Italy*, wherein he had abundance

dance of *Elephants*, Animals till that time utterly unknown to the *Romans*.

Q. How many Battels were fought during this War?

A. Two that were considerable ones. The first was fought in *Campania* near *Heraclea*: And the second in *Lucania*.

Q. What was the Success of this first Battel?

A. The *Romans* under the Conduct of *Levinus* had the worst on't; but they were vanquish'd rather by the disorder the strange sight of those huge *Elephants* put them into, than by the Forces of *Pyrrhus*.

Q. Were store of Prisoners taken here?

A. Yes; but upon *Fabricius* his redemanding them, *Pyrrhus* sent them all back without taking Ransom for them.

Q. What did *Pyrrhus* after he had gain'd this Battel?

A. He visited the Field where this Scene was transacted, and observing that the *Romans* still grasp'd those that had given them their Death's wound; that Dead as they were, a certain Fierceness appear'd in their Looks, and that all their Wounds were honourably received before; he cry'd out in a great Amazement, Oh! how easy a matter were it for me to Conquer the whole World if I had the *Romans* for Soldiers, or the *Romans* had me for their King!

Q. What did *Pyrrhus* after this?

A. He

*A.* He dispatch'd Ambassadors to *Rome* with considerable Presents to endeavour to accommodate the matter between the *Tarentines* and them.

Q. The Ambassadors being sent back, what did *Pyrrhus* ask them at their return?

*A.* He demanded of them what they thought of *Rome*? and they immediately answer'd him, That their City seem'd to be a Temple, and their Senate an Assembly of Gods.

Q. Did not the *Romans* bring a Second Army into the Field?

*A.* Yes: Nay, they were so incredibly diligent, that *Pyrrhus* in mighty admiration said of them, Without question, I am born under the Constellation of *Hercules*. I have a fine time on't here to cut off the Heads of my Enemies, since new ones perpetually arise from their Blood, like those of *Hidra*, to persecute me.

Q. Well, and what was the Success of this Second Battel that was fought in *Lucania*?

*A.* Those very *Elephants* that gain'd *Pyrrhus* his first Battel, lost him the second.

Q. How happen'd that?

*A.* It so fell out, That one *Caius Minutius* cut off the Trunk of one of the *Elephants*, which made the Creature cry out so furiously, that he afrighted his fellows; so away they ran back upon their own Forces, broke their Ranks, and put the Army into so

strange a Confusion, that it was no difficult matter for the *Romans* to defeat them.

Q. What follow'd after this Battel?

A. *Pyrrhus's* Physician came to *Fabricius*, offering to Poyson his own Master; but the Generous Consul sent him back to *Pyrrhus*, who commanded him to be immediately hanged.

Q. After this overthrow, where did *Pyrrhus* turn himself?

A. He goes into *Sicily* to assist the *Syracusans* against the *Carthaginians*; but this Expedition not succeeding to his Expectation, he goes back into *Italy* in the Year 479, where he was beaten, and his Camp forc'd by the *Romans*.

Q. After this last Defeat, whither did he go?

A. After he had quitted *Italy*, he return'd into *Epirus*, having been employ'd Six Years in the *Tarentine* and *Sicilian* War.

Q. And what happen'd after the Retreat of *Pyrrhus*?

A. The *Romans* having defeated the *Tarentines* and *Samnites*, the Conquer'd were obliged to submit to the Conquerors, so they entr'd into an Alliance with those of *Rome*, in the Year 482.

Q. What farther progress did the *Romans* make?

A. They attack'd the *Salentines*, and at last the *Punic* War started up, which prov'd to be the longest and most dangerous War that the *Romans* had hitherto experienced.

The

*The First Punic War.*

*The Year of the World 3790. Of Rome 490.*

Q **W**hen began the first *Punic War*?

A. In the Year of *Rome* 490, two Years after the return of *Pyrrhus* into *Epirus*.

Q. What occasion'd it?

A. The Ambition and Jealousy of *Carthage*.

Q. Who were the Authors of this War?

A. The People of *Messina* on one side, and *Hiero* King of *Syracuse*, an Ally of *Carthage*, on the other.

Q. How came this about?

A. This King, in Conjunction with the *Carthaginians*, declar'd War against the City of *Messina*; and the *Romans* resolving to Succour the *Messineses*, because they had been always their good Friends, sent over an Army into *Sicily*, under the Conduct of *Appius Claudius*.

Q. What was the Success of it?

A. It was a long time uncertain, altho the *Carthaginians* were Masters at Sea, and the *Romans* at Land.

Q. But which side obtain'd the Victory in the mean time?

A. *Appius Claudius*, the Roman General, defeated *Hiero*, and having oblig'd him to demand a Peace, he obtain'd it upon easy terms.

Q. What happen'd sometime after?

A. *Duilius* put out to Sea.

Q. Was not he the first of the *Romans* that gain'd a Naval Victory?

A. Yes.

Q. About what time did this happen?

A. In the Fifth Year of the War.

Q. After what manner?

A. The Gallies of the *Carthaginians* which were light and nimble, were over-power'd by those of the *Romans* that were short and heavy; and by this means, their dexterity in managing their Oars was of no service to them, and their whole Fleet was either Taken or Sunk.

Q. What other remarkable Passages happen'd?

A. The *Romans* gain'd some other Advantages over the Enemy; but their Consul *Catilius* was surrounded on every side in the Streights of *Camarina*, into which he was imprudently got, and was as happily delivered.

Q. By what means, and by whom was this effected?

A. By the Valour of *Calpurnius Flamma*, a Tribune, who with a Detachment of Three hundred chosen men, fell upon the Enemies main Body, which kept that Defile.

Q. What did the *Carthaginians* do in this Juncture?

A. They



A. They turn'd all their Forces immediately upon *Calpurnius*, and so the *Romans* had an opportunity to make their Escape out of this narrow place.

Q. But how did *Calpurnius's* Three hundred men come off?

A. They were all cut in pieces.

Q. But did their Leader make a shift to save himself.

A. Yes; but he was wounded in six or seven places.

Q. How did this War conclude?

A. A Second Engagement at Sea put an end to it.

Q. Who gain'd the Victory?

A. *Caius Lutatius* in the Twenty third year, near the *Isle of Ægates*, and this Victory put a period to the War.

Q. Who commanded the *Carthaginian* Fleet?

A. *Hanno* was their Admiral.

Q. What were the Conditions of the Treaty of Peace?

A. That the *Carthaginians* should Surrender *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, and all the other Isles that are between *Afric* and *Italy*, to the *Romans*; and that for Twenty years, they should pay them Twelve hundred Talents.

Q. Who signalized himself in this War?

A. *Attilius Regulus*, who took *Tunis*, and several other Cities belonging to the *Carthaginians*, and at last went to lay close Siege to *Carthage* it self.

Q. Without doubt this obliged the *Carthaginians* to sue for a Peace?

A. Right.

Q. And was *Regulus* willing to grant it?

A. Not unless it were upon very hard Conditions.

Q. When the *Carthaginians* saw that, what Course did they take?

A. They were necessitated to give the Command of their Army to *Xantippus*, Captain of the *Lacedæmonians*.

Q. What remarkable Actions did this General perform?

A. He gave the *Romans* a great overthrow, kill'd Thirty thousand upon the place, and took Fifteen thousand Prisoners, among whom was *Attilius Regulus*.

Q. In what place was this Battel fought?

A. Near *Clupea*.

Q. What did they do with *Regulus*?

A. They sent him to *Rome* to Treat with the Senate about the Exchange of Prisoners.

Q. And did he perswade the *Romans* to treat of a Peace?

A. No: far from that, he endeavour'd as much as in him lay to hinder them from making one; telling them the Affairs of *Carthage* were in a very Bad condition, and that they ought never to leave off till they had utterly ruin'd them.

Q. What became of him then at his return to *Carthage*?

A. Having

*A.* Having told them the *Romans* would by no means hearken to a Peace, unless they would submit to their Authority, the *Carthaginians* put him to Death.

*Q.* What Torments did they make him endure?

*A.* They shut him up in a Barrel, stuck full of Nails, with the Points towards him.

*Q.* And thus the first *Punic* War was ended?

*A.* Right, after Twenty three years losses on both sides.

*Q.* Was not the Temple of *Janus* shut soon after?

*A.* Yes; the first time since *Numa's* Reign.

*Q.* Was it long before it was open'd again.

*A.* No; for the *Romans* were soon after obliged to fight against the *Ligurians*, the *Liburnians*, and the *Insubrian Gauls*, who were often beaten.

*Q.* By whom?

*A.* The *Ligurians* and *Liburnians* by *Fulvius*; and the *Insubrian Gauls*, who had *Britomarus* to head them, by *Æmilius*.

*Q.* Were not the *Gauls* likewise defeated by others?

*A.* *Flaminius* vanquish'd them when *Ariovistus* was their General; and they received another overthrow from *Marcellus*, who slew their King *Viridomarus* with his own hand.

*The Second Punic War.**The Year of the World 3814. Of Rome 514.*

Q. **W**hen did this Second War begin?  
 A. Twenty four years after the first?

Q. What was the occasion of the Second War?

A. The Ambition of *Annibal*, the Son of *Amilcar*. Besides, the *Carthaginians* grew now impatient of their Twenty four years of Servitude, and of having paid a Tribute to the *Romans* for so long a time.

Q. But how came *Annibal* to forward it so mightily?

A. Because his Father, who carried him, when he was but Nine years old, into *Spain*, made him solemnly Swear at the foot of an Altar, never to be reconciled to the *Romans*.

Q. What happen'd during this War?

A. At the end of Nine years War, *Amilcar* was slain, and his Son-in-Law, *Asdrubal*, set up in his room.

Q. What befel *Asdrubal* after this?

A. He was slain Eight years after in Battel, and *Annibal* succeeded him.

Q. What did *Annibal* do when he saw himself General of the *Carthaginians*?

A. Fearing lest the same misfortune that happen'd to his Father *Amilcar* and *Asdrubal*, should

should attend him, if he did not go upon some Generous Expedition, he made himself Master of all the Provinces of *Spain* that reach as far as the *Ebre*.

Q. And what did he next attempt?

A. He made his Army march into the Territories of the *Oscades*, whom he reduced under his obedience, and soon after possess'd himself of all the Cities thereabout, but especially those belonging to the *Capertans* and the *Vacceans*.

Q. Whither did he shape his course after this?

A. He march'd to attack *Saguntus*, a City of *Spain*, and an Ally of the *Romans*.

Q. What did the *Romans* do upon this occasion?

A. They sent Ambassadors to *Carthage* to complain of the Injury that was done to the *Saguntines*, and of the Infraction of the Treaty of Peace by this means.

Q. What sort of an Answer was return'd them?

A. They were forc'd to return home, very ill satisfied with the Answer of the *Carthaginians*.

Q. What did the *Saguntines* do upon this refusal?

A. Harass'd with the continual Fatigues of a Nine Months Siege, and prest by Famine and want of Provisions, they demand'd to capitulate; but *Annibal* persisting to treat them with too much indignity, they chose

chose rather to perish than to trust themselves in the hands of so cruel a man.

*Q.* And what did these people do, being thus reduced to despair ?

*A.* After they had buried their Gold and Silver in the ground, they made a great Bonfire in the midst of the Town, into which the greatest part of the Garison leap'd, and the rest were inhumanely kill'd.

*Q.* After the taking of this City, what did they do with it ?

*A.* They laid it level with the ground.

*Q.* When the *Romans* heard of these Outrages, how were they affected ?

*A.* They dispatch'd Ambassadors to *Carthage*, to know of them whether they approv'd of the procedure of *Annibal*.

*Q.* And how were they receiv'd ?

*A.* *Fabius*, one of the Ambassadors, seeing them demur upon the Point, told them they had nothing to do but to chuse either Peace or War; and all of them immediately crying out War, War, the Ambassadors immediately departed.

*Q.* Whither did the Ambassadors go before they return'd to *Rome* ?

*A.* They visited *Spain* and *Gaul*, to desire the people of those Nations not to give Passage to the *Carthaginians*.

*Q.* Did they accomplish their designs ?

*A.* No; for those of *Spain* being affrighted by the sad example of *Saguntus*, and the *Gauls* by the great Success of *Annibal's* Arms,

Arms, they refused this Embassy as a ridiculous Proposition.

Q. Where resided *Annibal* ?

A. He pass'd the Winter at New *Carthage*, then return'd to *Cales*, where after he had perform'd his Vows to *Hercules*, he renew'd his Ancient Oath.

Q. What was it that instigated him to do it again ?

A. An extraordinary Dream, which fill'd him with joy, and put him upon the Resolution to march into *Italy* with his Army.

Q. And how did *Annibal* employ himself before his arrival into *Italy* ?

A. At first he made himself Master of the *Ilergetes*, the *Bargusians*, the *Ausetans*, and all *Aquitain*.

Q. Whither went he afterwards ?

A. He pass'd the *Pyrenean* Mountains, then he march'd through *Gaul*, notwithstanding the opposition of the people, who were obliged to give way. At last he came to the foot of the *Alpes*.

Q. Did not *Annibal's* Army find it a difficult matter to climb these Mountains ?

A. 'Twas troublesome enough, as well for the height of the Rocks, which seem'd to touch the Skies, as for the Snows which made the ways almost impracticable. Besides, that the Inhabitants of the Hills were no small impediment to them in their March.

Q. Did

*Q.* Did *Annibal* then accomplish this vast Design?

*A.* Yes: For having with an undaunted Courage undertaken to climb the Hills, on the ninth day he found himself on the top of them.

*Q.* When he was there, what did he make his Soldiers remark?

*A.* He shows 'em all *Italy*, lying at a great distance, bidding them look upon that vast Country as the certain Recompence of their Toil and Labour.

*Q.* Was not *Annibal* more perplex'd to get down the Hills, than he was in climbing up?

*A.* Right: For the Frost rendred the ways every where so slippery, that there was no steddly walking; besides the Mountain was so steep in some places, that there was scarce any other way of getting down, but by catching hold of the Twigs and Branches of Trees that grew between the Rocks.

*Q.* How then did he make a shift to reach the Valleys?

*A.* He made use of Fire, Iron, and Vinegar, to open a way through the Rocks; and thus having passed the *Alpes* in the space of Fifteen days, he came into *Italy* with a Hundred thousand Foot, and Twenty thousand Horse.

*Q.* Where was it that *Annibal* first gave Battel to the *Romans*?

*A.* Be-



*A.* Between the *Po* and the *Ticinus*.

*Q.* What was the Success of it?

*A.* The *Roman* Army was overcome.

*Q.* Who had the Command of it?

*A.* *Scipio* the Consul.

*Q.* Was he not wounded?

*A.* Yes; and had certainly been taken by the Enemy, if the Valour of his Son, who was afterwards surnam'd *Africanus*, had not forc'd him out of their hands.

*Q.* When did *Annibal* give the second Battel?

*A.* A short time after the first.

*Q.* Where was it fought?

*A.* At the River *Trebia*.

*Q.* How was the Event of it?

*A.* No happier for the *Romans* than the last: *Sempronius* and his whole Army was there defeated, and *Annibal* triumphantly pass'd the *Appennines*.

*Q.* What did *Annibal* do the year following?

*A.* He came into *Etruria* after a March of four days and three nights in the midst of Bogs and Morasses, without reposing himself, which so fatigu'd him, that he lost an eye.

*Q.* What happen'd to him after this?

*A.* 'Twas in this place that *Flaminius* the Consul, a man of great rashness and precipitation, fell into the Snares which *Annibal* had laid for him, he was slain, and his Army put to the Rout near the Lake of *Trasimene*.

*Q.* How

Q. How many *Romans* lost their lives in this Battel?

A. Near Fifteen thousand slain, and some Ten thousand put to flight, and dispers'd all over *Etruria*.

Q. Did not some remarkable Accident happen after this Battel?

A. 'Tis reported that two women lamenting their Children at one of the Gates of the City, whom they suppos'd to be dead, seeing them unexpectedly return, were so fill'd with joy, that the excess of it kill'd them.

Q. After this great Overthrow, what was done at *Rome*?

A. The people being assembled, consulted the Books of the *Sybil*s, where they found, That all these Misfortunes were only owing to the Indignation of the God *Mars*.

Q. What Resolutions did they form upon this Discovery?

A. They vow'd to celebrate a Holy Spring; and after that, in the absence of the Consuls, the people created *Fabius Maximus* Dictator, and *M. Minucius Rufus* Master of the Horse.

Q. Where was *Annibal* at that time?

A. He was advanced as far as *Spoletum*, which obliged the two Consuls *Emilius Paulus*, and *Terentius Varro*, to hasten with their Army.

Q. Where did the two Armies meet?

A. Near *Cannæ*, a small Town scituated in

in *Apulia*: Here did *Varro* put his men in a posture to receive the Enemies.

Q. Was this a bloody Fight?

A. Yes; for there was near Forty five thousand *Romans* slain, with Fourscore Senators, and *Paulus* the Consul himself was killed.

Q. What remarkable Passages happen'd in this Battel?

A. The Consul *Paulus* having been wounded, was in the midst of the hurry and confusion found covered with blood and dust, by a Collonel of the Army.

Q. What said this Officer to *Paulus*, seeing he was still alive?

A. Take my Horse, and fly for your self.

Q. And what answer did *Paulus* make him?

A. No, no; use him your self, cries he, with a dying voice, and go to *Rome*, and bid the Senators from me fortify the Town before *Annibal* comes to attack it.

Q. Did he say any thing else to him?

A. Above all, tell *Fabius Maximus*, that I have liv'd, and that I now dye remembering his Orders and Counsels; so leave me here to expire amidst this horrible Slaughter of the *Romans*.

Q. Did the Slaughter continue a long time?

A. So long, that *Annibal* commanded his Soldiers to desist; and so great, that he sent to *Carthage* Three Bushels of Golden Rings, taken

taken from the Fingers of the *Roman* Knights that were kill'd.

Q. What happen'd after the Battel of *Cannæ* ?

A. Some young *Romans* were debating amongst themselves to abandon *Italy*.

Q. And had their design like to have pass'd in this Assembly ?

A. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, a Collonel in the Army, who was after surnamed *Africanus*, drew out his Sword, and swore he would kill the man who would not take an Oath never to go out of *Rome*.

Q. Did not the *Romans* desire a Peace ?

A. No; they were so far from demanding a Peace of the *Carthaginians*, that receiving advice that the Consul *Varro*, whose rashness was in part the cause of that cruel Loss, was on his way home, all the City went out to meet him, to thank him because he had not despair'd of the Safety of the Commonwealth.

Q. What do they say of *Annibal* ?

A. That if he had known how to make use of a Victory, as well as he did how to get one, *Rome* had been utterly ruin'd.

Q. Where was *Annibal* then ?

A. Near *Capua*, which he reduced under his Obedience, as well as a great part of *Italy*.

Q. Had he always the better on't ?

A. No ; for *Capua* proved as fatal to him, as *Cannæ* had been to the *Romans*.

Q. How came that about ?

A. Be-

*A.* Because he and his Army abandon'd themselves to the Effeminacies and Pleasures of that place, and staid a long time there, so that he never thought of pursuing his Conquests, which gave the *Romans* time to take breath again.

*Q.* What did the *Romans* do in this Exigence ?

*A.* All the *Roman* Youth, the Magistrates, nay, even the Slaves, took up Arms.

*Q.* What did *Fabius Maximus* do in the mean time ?

*A.* He endeavoured by delays and amusements to weaken *Annibal*.

*Q.* What did the *Romans* attempt with their Army ?

*A.* They laid Siege to *Capua*.

*Q.* And was *Annibal* idle ?

*A.* No ; thinking to make them raise the Siege, he marched directly towards *Rome* ?

*Q.* And what happen'd to him ?

*A.* A sudden Tempest arising just as he was going to fight *Fulvius*, he was oblig'd to return back without fighting.

*Q.* Was it long before *Capua* surrendred ?

*A.* No.

*Q.* How did the *Romans* use them ?

*A.* They took away all their Privileges.

*Q.* What followed after the taking of *Capua* ?

*A.* *Asdrubal* going to join his Brother *Annibal*, who lay then in *Apulia* with a powerful Army, was defeated by the Consuls

fuls *Claudius Nero*, and *Livius Salinator*.

Q. After this Battel, what did *Nero* do ?

A. He caused *Asdrubal's* Head to be thrown into the *Carthaginian* Camp ; which *Annibal* seeing, he immediately cried out, I perceive my self now to be unfortunate.

Q. What was *Scipio* doing in *Afric* in the mean time ?

A. He cut in pieces *Hanno's* Army , the General of the *Carthaginians*, and took Prisoner *Siphax* King of *Numidia*, who had quitted the *Romans*, and taken the side of the *Carthaginians*.

Q. Wherefore did *Scipio* pass into *Afric* ?

A. 'Twas done with a design to remove *Annibal* out of *Italy*.

Q. And did it succeed ?

A. Yes.

Q. What did *Annibal* do before he left *Italy* ?

A. He exercis'd a thousand Cruelties in the Towns that continued still under his Power ; nay, he order'd all the *Italians* that were in his Army to be massacred.

Q. What happen'd upon *Annibal's* arrival into *Afric* ?

A. A bloody Battel was fought near *Zama*.

Q. On which side did the Victory fall ?

A. *Annibal* being defeated by *Scipio*, despaired of retrieving his Fortune there, and so fled into *Asia*.

Q. The

*Q.* The *Carthaginians* being thus vanquish'd, what became of them?

*A.* They were oblig'd to submit to the Peace allow'd them by the *Romans*.

*Q.* What name was it that *Scipio* obtain'd by this Expedition?

*A.* That of *Africanus*.

### *The War of Macedonia.*

*The Year of the World 3850. Of Rome 550.*

*Q.* **W**hen did the *Macedonian War* begin?

*A.* A little after the Peace of *Carthage*, in the year of *Rome 550*.

*Q.* For what Reasons did the *Romans* undertake this War?

*A.* As well for the ancient quarrel they had to *Philip* King of *Macedonia* for joining with *Annibal* when he was Master of *Italy*, as for the several Complaints their Allies, and especially the *Athenians* made of them.

*Q.* Who first open'd the War?

*A.* King *Philip*.

*Q.* How did he begin it?

*A.* By the Siege of *Abydos*.

*Q.* What became of the Inhabitants of that place?

*A.* *Philip* reduced them to such an extremity, that after the example of the *Saguntines* they chose to kill themselves.

*Q.* Was *Philip* always thus successful?

*A.* No;

*A.* No; for four years after he was defeated by *Flaminius* at the \* *Cynocephale* in *Thessaly*.

*Q.* Did *Philip* lose abundance of men there?

*A.* He lost Thirteen thousand, reckoning the Dead and the Prisoners.

*Q.* Was a Peace granted him at last?

*A.* Yes, on that condition he would lay no more pretensions to any of the Cities of *Greece*.

*Q.* The Liberty of *Greece* then was the Price of this Victory?

*A.* Right; for all the Cities of *Greece*, except *Sparta*, were free.

*Q.* Was that City always in a servile condition?

*A.* No; for in the year 561, *Philopæmen* having kill'd the Tyrant *Nabis*, made them associate with the *Acheans*.

### *The War of Antiochus.*

*The Year of the World* 3862.    *Of Rome* 562.

*Q.* **W**hen began the War of *Antiochus* against the *Romans*?

*A.* In the Year of *Rome* 562.

*Q.* What made him declare War against them?

---

\* So called from resembling a Dog's head.



*A.* He was instigated to it by *Annibal*, who was then a Refugee in his Court.

*Q.* And how came he off?

*A.* Having been beaten both by Land and Sea, as well by the Consul *Lucius Scipio*, Brother to him surnamed *Africanus*, as by the Courage and good Conduct of his Brother, he was forced to beg a Peace.

*Q.* On what Terms was it given him?

*A.* That he would quit all the Places on this side Mount *Taurus*.

*Q.* Did not *Lucius Scipio* for this Exploit merit the name of *Asiaticus*?

*A.* You are in the right.

### *The second Macedonian War.*

*The Year of the World 3883. Of Rome 583.*

*Q.* What did *Philip* King of *Macedonia* do all this while?

*A.* He wholly employ'd himself in making Preparations for a new War.

*Q.* Had this *Philip* any Children?

*A.* He had two, whose names were *Perfes* and *Demetrius*. This last was given in Hostage to the *Romans*, who entertain'd him very respectfully.

*Q.* Were there no Divisions between the Brothers?

*A.* Yes; and so managed, that their Father *Philip* put *Demetrius* to death, whom the Jealousy of *Perfes*, and the kind Treatment he receiv'd at *Rome* had render'd suspicious to him.

*Q.* What

Q. What was the Consequence of all this?

A. The year following, *Perfes*, who inherited the hatred and designs of his Father against the *Romans*, declared War against them.

Q. What was the Success of this War?

A. *Æmilius* the Roman General entirely defeated *Perfes* in the Year 586.

Q. How many *Macedonians* lost their lives upon this occasion?

A. There were Thirty thousand of them slain.

Q. How did this War conclude?

A. With the final destruction of the Kingdom of *Macedonia*.

Q. Did *Perfes* continue there?

A. No; he engag'd himself in the Interests of *Gentius* King of *Illyrium*, who met with the same destiny.

Q. How did that happen?

A. He was overcome by *Anicius* the Prætor; and the same year both *Anicius* and *Æmilius* triumph'd at *Rome*, one over *Gentius*, and the other over *Perfes*, and each King marched before the Chariot of his Conqueror.

Q. In what year did this fall out?

A. In the year 587 of *Rome*. Thus *Macedonia* and *Illyrium* were reduced into the form of Provinces.

Q. After these mighty Victories, no body I suppose thought it dishonourable to submit to the *Romans*?

A. No;

*A.* No ; for after the Defeat of *Antiochus*, and the Reduction of *Macedonia*, several Kings and Nations strove, and were ambitious to be under their Protection.

*Q.* Among these Kings, were there not some that shew'd themselves more forward than the rest ?

*A.* There were two, *Eumenes* King of *Asia*, and *Prusias* King of *Bithynia*, surnamed the Hunter ; but *Eumenes* was suspected of some under-hand dealing.

*Q.* What was that ?

*A.* To have secretly favour'd the Party of *Perseus*.

*Q.* What method did he take to clear himself of this Suspicion ?

*A.* He sent his Brother *Attalus* to *Rome*, who had begg'd his Brother's Kingdom for himself, if a Physician appointed to bear him company in this Journey, had not hinder'd his design.

*Q.* And what did *Prusias* on his side, to engage the *Romans* to support him ?

*A.* He scandalously flatter'd them, having caus'd some Medals to be coin'd in Honour of the Senate, which he treated as a Divinity, and the Senators, whom he call'd his Tutelar gods.

*The Third Punic War.**The Year of the World 3905. Of Rome 605.*

**Q** When did this Third *Punic* War begin?

**A.** In the year of *Rome* 605.

**Q.** What gave occasion to it?

**A.** 'Twas because the *Carthaginians* violated the Articles of Peace, and declar'd War against *Massinissa*, who was an Ally of the *Romans*.

**Q.** And what Resolutions did the Senate make hereupon?

**A.** 'Twas unanimously decreed to follow the advice of *Cato* the Cenfor, which was to destroy the City of *Carthage* entirely.

**Q.** And to effect it, what Measures were taken?

**A.** *Censorinus* and *Mamilius* the Consuls marched directly to the City.

**Q.** What did the *Carthaginians* to avert the Storm?

**A.** They sent Deputies to them to know what Satisfaction it was they demanded.

**Q.** What answer was return'd them?

**A.** That it was the Will and Pleasure of the Senate, that they should demolish their City even to the Foundations, and remove themselves at least Ten Miles from the Sea.

**Q.** So harsh a Proposition, how did it  
relish

relish with the high spirits of the *Carthaginians* ?

*A.* It possess'd them with so vigorous an Indignation, that they made a much greater Resistance than could be expected from so feeble an Enemy.

Q. And what was the Result of all ?

*A.* In the fourth year of this War *Carthage* was taken by *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, who burnt and wholly destroy'd it.

### *The War of Corinth.*

*The Year of the World 3907. Of Rome 607.*

Q. FOR what reason did the *Romans* declare War against the People of *Corinth* ?

*A.* Because of their ill treatment of the *Roman* Ambassadors, as also because they brought over the *Acheans* to their own Party.

Q. How did their Affairs succeed ?

*A.* They were defeated by the Prætor *Metellus* in two Battels, near the *Thermopylæ*, and in *Phocis*, in the year of *Rome 607*.

Q. And what was the destiny of *Corinth* ?

*A.* *Mummius* the Consul, after he had made himself Master of all *Achaia*, order'd *Corinth* the Capital City of that Nation to be burnt down to the ground.

Q. What remarkable matter happen'd in the burning of it ?

*A.* Different Metals being melted together, accidentally form'd the famous *Corinthian* Brass, on which the *Romans* set a higher value than Silver, and which in succeeding times was imitated by a mixture of several Metals, on which they bestow'd the same name.

### *The War of Portugal.*

*The Year of the World* 3908.      *Of Rome* :

Q. **W**H O occasion'd the War of Portugal ?

*A.* A Prince whose name was *Viriatius*, who had usurp'd the Sovereignty of that Country.

Q. By whom was that Country retaken ?

*A.* By *Quintus Fabius*.

Q. What did they do to *Viriatius* ?

*A.* They made a Peace with him.

Q. And after the Treaty was ratified, what became of him then ?

*A.* The year following *Cepio* the Consul, without having any regard to the Treaty, fell suddenly upon *Viriatius*, and treacherously put him to death.

*The Destruction of Numantia.**The Year of the World 3913. Of Rome 613.*

**Q.** WHEN did the Ruin of *Numantia* begin?

**A.** Sixteen years after that of *Carthage*, the very same *Scipio* who had destroy'd that famous City, and thence acquir'd the name of *Africanus*, went to besiege *Numantia*.

**Q.** What incited *Scipio* to be angry with them?

**A.** The *Numantians* had refus'd to surrender to the *Romans* some Rebels who had taken shelter among them.

**Q.** And how did they behave themselves?

**A.** Tho they were inferior in number to the Enemy, yet for Nine years together they resisted the whole Power of *Rome*; nay, they fatigu'd and harass'd two or three of their Armies.

**Q.** But at last how went their Affairs?

**A.** *Scipio* the Destroyer of *Carthage* having sat down before the Town, shut up the besieged within their own Walls, where they all kill'd themselves out of despair.

**Q.** And what became then of the City of *Numantia*?

**A.** It was raz'd to the ground; and thus all *Spain* became a Province of the *Romans*.

*Q.* What other considerable Actions did the *Romans* about this time perform ?

*A.* They made themselves Masters of *Macedonia* the Third time.

*Q.* What was he who had possess'd that Kingdom for some years before ?

*A.* His name *Andriscus*, a sorry, obscure, pitiful Fellow, who pretending to be the Son of *Perfes* had enter'd that Kingdom with very considerable Forces, in the year 605.

*Q.* Did he continue long in the possession of this Kingdom ?

*A.* No ; for the year following he was defeated by *Cecilius Metellus* the Prætor, who kill'd him Twenty five thousand men. This Victory made him take the name of *Macedonicus*.

*The War of the Slaves ; and others  
about the same time.*

*The Year of the World 3921.      Of Rome 621.*

*Q.* WHO was the chief of these Slaves that excited the War ?

*A.* *Ennus*, a *Syrian* by birth, who counterfeiting a Divine Revelation, encourag'd his Brother Slaves to revolt.

*Q.* How many of these Slaves did he muster in a Body together ?

*A.* About Seventy thousand.

*Q.* And what memorable Exploits did he perform.

*A.* He



*A.* He defeated four *Roman* Prætors ; but in the Year 622. he was vanquish'd by the Consul *Rupilius*.

Q. What remarkable thing happen'd in the year 621 ?

*A.* *Attalus* died, and by Testament left the People of *Rome* his Heirs.

Q. Did not this alienation make some Malecontents at home ?

*A.* Yes ; for it so happen'd that *Aristonicus*, Natural Son to *Eumenes*, being discontented at this procedure, possess'd himself of *Asia*, and cut in pieces the Army of the Prætor *Crassus*.

Q. This *Aristonicus*, I suppose, was not always victorious in the Field ?

*A.* No ; for in the year 624 he was vanquish'd by the Consul *Perpenna*.

Q. Was not the abovemention'd year remarkable for something else ?

*A.* Right, for the Death of the second *Africanus*, who was found dead in his bed ; his Wife being suspected to have poison'd him.

Q. Did not the *Romans* signalize their Valour upon some new occasion ?

*A.* In the year 629 they first attack'd the Inhabitants of *Gallia Transalpina*, and begun with the *Salians* and *Allobroges*.

Q. Who put a Period to that War ?

*A.* *Fabius* the Consul, by defeating *Bituitus* King of the *Arverni* in a pitch'd Battel.

Q. How many men did the King lose in this Action?

A. About Twenty six thousand. The Bat-tel was fought near *Iscra*; and 'twas at this time that *Gallia Narbonensis* was reduc'd to the condition of a *Roman Province*.

### *The War against Jugurtha.*

*The Year of the World 3943. Of Rome 643.*

Q. WHAT was the Original of this War?

A. 'Twas because *Jugurtha* King of *Nu-midia*, Bastard Son of *Micipsa*, had ravish'd the Kingdom from the two Legitimate Children of the King his Father, and unjustly dispossest'd them of it.

Q. What did *Micipsa's* Children do in this Exigence?

A. They implor'd the Assistance of the *Roman People*, who immediately declar'd War against *Jugurtha*.

Q. And who carried the Victory?

A. *Jugurtha*; but he defeated the *Romans* rather by his private Liberalities, than by the force of his Arms.

Q. But did he still prevail?

A. No; *Metellus* the Consul, who was a man not to be bribed against the Interest of his Country, was sent against him, and had the better of him in several Engagements.

Q. What

Q. What other ill successes attended *Jugurtha*?

A. *Marius* compleated his Destruction, and at last he was delivered into the hands of his Conqueror, through the Treachery of *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*.

Q. And what became of *Jugurtha* then?

A. He was carried Prisoner to *Rome*, and after he had served to adorn the Triumph of *Marius*, died in his Confinement.

Q. When did that happen?

A. In the year 647, about the time when *Cicero* was born.

Q. Did *Marius* perform any more considerable Exploits?

A. Some time after this, in his fourth Consulship, he exterminated the *Teutones* and the *Ambrons*.

Q. Did he do any thing else to immortalize his Name?

A. He, together with *Catulus*, defeated the *Cimbrians*, who had design'd to force their way into *Italy*.

Q. How many of the Enemies were slain?

A. There were Twenty six thousand kill'd, and sixty thousand taken Prisoners.

*The War against Mithridates.**The Year of the World 3960. Of Rome 660.***Q.** WHEN began this War?*A.* About the Year of *Rome* 660.**Q.** Who was this *Mithridates*?*A.* King of *Pontus*.**Q.** Why did the *Romans* make War against him?*A.* Because he had turn'd out *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*, and possess'd himself of their Dominions.**Q.** What Method did these two Princes take to be re-establish'd in their Kingdoms?*A.* As they were Allies of the *Romans*, they demanded assistance of *Sylla*, who at that time was *Prætor*.**Q.** And did *Sylla* take their part?*A.* He immediately took up arms, and having ejected the Usurper by Force, he restored *Ariobarzanes* and *Nicomedes* to their own Country again.**Q.** But how did *Mithridates* bear this Ejection?*A.* He employ'd all his Efforts so successfully, that he turn'd them out the second time one after the other; but they were again reestablish'd by the Authority of the Senate.**Q.** Was

Q. Was not *Mithridates* somewhat daunted, to see himself attack'd by *Nicomedes* and the *Romans*?

A. Far from that: He levied a mighty Army, and enter'd *Cappadocia* and *Bithynia*?

Q. What did he particularly do in the Kingdom of *Bithynia*?

A. He defeated the *Roman* Army, and on a day appointed order'd all the *Italians* that were in *Asia* to be massacred.

Q. Did he make any farther Advances?

A. He made himself Master of *Macedonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*.

Q. Did not the *Romans* endeavour to stop the progress of his Conquests?

A. *Sylla*, who was then Proconsul, parted from *Rome* to hinder his Designs: He immediately recover'd *Athens* out of his hands, and afterwards compell'd him to make a Peace; in pursuance of which he was to abandon *Asia*, *Bithynia*, and *Cappadocia*.

Q. Did *Mithridates* stir no more?

A. Some years after he renew'd the War in *Asia*; but *Lucullus* the Consul beat him both by Land and by Sea.

Q. Whither did he retire after this Overthrow?

A. At first he resided in his Kingdom of *Pontus*, but finding himself still pursued by *Lucullus*, he was obliged to take Sanctuary in *Armenia*, and beg the Protection of *Tigranes*.

Q. And did *Lucullus* still march after him?

A. Ha-

*A.* Having follow'd him into this Country, he there defeated the Two Kings, whose Army consisted of Two hundred thousand Foot, and Sixty thousand Horse.

Q. What were the Effects of this Battel?

*A.* The Taking of *Nisiba*, and *Tigranocetta* the Capital City of *Armenia*.

Q. Was not *Lucullus* gloriously recompenc'd for all these Heroick Actions?

*A.* No; for his Soldiers refusing to stand by him, he was forced to give way to *Pompey*, who had the Management of this War devolved upon him after *Lucullus*.

Q. What Remarkable Exploits did this new General perform?

*A.* He joyn'd the *Iberians* and *Albanians* to the *Roman Empire*, as he pursued *Mithridates*.

Q. What was the end of that Unfortunate Prince?

*A.* Seeing himself prest hard on every side, he was thinking to make the best of his way into *Gaul*, and shelter himself there, but the Revolt of his Son *Pharnaces*, together with that of his Army fully compleated his Ruin.

Q. After what manner died he?

*A.* He endeavour'd ineffectually to dispatch himself by Poyson; and after several vain Attempts to hasten Death that way, was forced to Stab himself. Historians frequently mention him for his great skill in Languages; and an Antidote of his own Invention still bears his Name.

Q. What

Q. When did this War fully terminate?

A. In the Year 691 under *Cicero's* Consul-  
 tate, after it had lasted Forty years.

### *The Civil War between Marius and Sylla.*

*The Year of the World 3966. Of Rome 666.*

Q. **W**hat was the Cause of the Civil war  
 between *Marius* and *Sylla*?

A. Ambition on both sides.

Q. What stands *Marius* charg'd with?

A. He procures the Command of the Ar-  
 my design'd against *Mithridates* for himself,  
 by the means of *Sulpitius*, the Tribune, who  
 by his own Authority had taken it away  
 from *Sylla*.

Q. And what did *Sylla* for his part?

A. Enraged at this Usage, he enters  
*Rome* with an Army, puts to death *Sulpi-  
 tius*, the Author of this whole Intrigue. and  
 beats out *Marius*, who thereupon fled into  
*Afric*.

Q. What became of *Marius*?

A. Having got Men enough together to  
 make a small Army, he went to joyn *Cinna*,  
 who was ejected out of *Rome* by *Octavius* his  
 Colleague.

Q. And what happen'd to him after-  
 wards?

A. *Sertorius* and *Carbo*, having likewise  
 joyn'd these two great Men with abundance  
 of

of their Friends, they resolv'd all four to march directly towards *Rome*.

Q. When they had entred the City, what did they do?

A. They made a most terrible Slaughter there.

Q. After this cruel Revenge was over, what does *Marius* next?

A. He gets himself to be declar'd Consul now the Seventh time, and dies the Year following.

Q. When *Marius* was dead, what Measures did *Sylla* take?

A. Having concluded a Peace with *Mithridates*, he came back into *Italy* in the Year 672, and after he had vanquish'd *Carbo Norbanus*, and *Marius* the Younger, enters *Rome*, and makes himself be created Dictator.

Q. Being elevated to this Dignity, how did he behave himself?

A. He in his turn banishes all those of the contrary Party, sends back the greatest part of the Senators, but especially *Sertorius*; and proscribes so great a number of them, that 'tis said, they amounted to Two thousand.

Q. After all this Havock and Destruction, what became of *Sylla*?

A. He resign'd the Dictatorship at the end of Three years.

Q. And was not that very acceptable to the People of *Rome*?

A. They were so well pleas'd at it, that when he died the Year following, they order'd a most magnificent Funeral for him.

Q. Were



*Q.* Were no considerable Persons of *Marinus's* Party remaining?

*A.* None but *Sertorius*, who had retired into *Spain*; but *Metellus* assisted by *Pompey*, made War against him.

*Q.* And did the Event answer his Expectations?

*A.* He frequently fought him without any extraordinary Success to boast off; till being at last assassinated by his own People, *Pompey* in a short time reduced all *Spain* under the Obedience of the *Romans*.

### *The Taking of Jerusalem.*

*The Year of the World 3691. Of Rome 691.*

*Q.* **A**fter *Pompey* in Conjunction with *Crassus*, had defeated the Slaves that rebell'd, and had clear'd the Seas of Pyrates, what did he next?

*A.* He march'd into *Judea* to determine some Difference which arose between the Two Brothers, *Aristobulus* and *Hircanus*, concerning the Kingdom of *Judea*.

*Q.* What did he there?

*A.* Having been ill receiv'd by *Aristobulus*, he took *Jerusalem* by force, and made them level the Walls of it.

*Q.* What was remarkable during the Siege?

*A.* He had so great a Respect for the Temple, that he prohibited his Soldiers to touch

touch the least thing belonging to that Sacred Place.

*Q.* And what did he do afterwards?

*A.* He makes *Judea* a Tributary Province of the Empire; sets *Hircannus* on the Throne, and carried the Proud *Aristobulus* chain'd and bound to set off the Triumph, which he celebrated at *Rome*.

### *The War between Cæsar and Pompey.*

*The Year of the World 3993. Of Rome 693.*

*Q.* **W**hat was the principal Cause of this War.

*A.* 'Twas Ambition occasion'd all those Calamities which the *Roman* Empire suffer'd during the Course of this War.

*Q.* How happen'd it?

*A.* *Pompey*, *Cæsar*, and *Crassus*, seeing themselves to be the most powerful Men of the Republick, made a League together, and so concerted Matters, that the Administration of all Affairs wholly rested on them. This Government was commonly call'd the *Triumvirat*.

*Q.* What did *Cæsar* to confirm his Treaty?

*A.* He gave his Daughter in Marriage to *Pompey*.

*Q.* How did they share the Empire between them?

*A.* *Cæsar* took the Government of *Gaul*. *Pompey* that of *Spain*. *Crassus* that of *Syria*, which

which he therefore demanded, because he expected to make great Advantages of that rich Province.

*Q.* After they had thus divided it, what did they do next?

*A.* *Cæsar* and *Crassus* went each of them to their Government. *Pompey* staid at *Rome*, and contented himself to send his Lieutenants into *Spain*.

*Q.* Which was *Crassus's* first Action in *Syria*?

*A.* He pillag'd the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and carried away all its Riches.

*Q.* Was he not soon after punish'd for this Sacrilege?

*A.* Yes; for in an Expedition against the *Parthians*, he was entirely defeated by *Surena*, General of their Army.

*Q.* What happen'd to him in this Battel?

*A.* He lost the greatest part of his men there, his own Son was slain, and having the misfortune himself to fall into the Hands of the Enemy, they cut off his Head, which being carried to *Orodes*, King of the *Parthians*, he caus'd his Mouth to be open'd, and pouring some melted Gold into it, said, *Now satisfy thy self with Gold, of which thou hast always been so desirous?*

*Q.* What did *Orodes* mean by so doing?

*A.* He only laugh'd at his Avarice, which influenced him to undertake that War.

*Q.* After *Crassus* was dead, how did *Cæsar* and *Pompey* order Matters?

*A.* *Pompey*

*A.* *Pompey* not enduring to bear an Equal, nor *Cæsar* a Superior, they mutually envied one another.

Q. What Measures did *Pompey* take?

*A.* He prevail'd with the Senate to recal *Cæsar* from his Government, as soon as his time was expir'd, and to Disband his Army.

Q. And did *Cæsar* comply with these Instructions?

*A.* As he rightly apprehended, that his Conquest of *Gaul* had created him several Enemies, and very well saw whither this tended, he sent them word, That he was resolv'd to put himself in a Condition to defend himself against his Enemies, and that he would not dismiss his Army, unless they would oblige *Pompey* to do the same.

Q. How did they receive his Proposal?

*A.* They would not hearken to it, which obliged him to assemble all his Forces together, and march immediately towards *Rome*.

Q. Did not *Pompey* endeavour to hinder his March?

*A.* *Cæsar's* sudden Expedition so afrighted him and his whole Party, that they soon abandon'd *Rome* and *Italy*, and pass'd into *Greece*.

Q. What did *Cæsar* do in the mean time?

*A.* He enter'd *Rome*, plunder'd the Publick Treasury; and after he had staid a short time there to compose the Tumults of the City,

City, he went into *Spain*, and beat *Afranius* and *Peterejus*, *Pompey's* Two Lieutenants, out of the Country.

Q. As he return'd, what did he do?

A. He made himself Master of *Marseilles*, and entring *Rome* the second time, he took Possession of the Dictatorship, which the *Prætor Lepidius* had procur'd to be conferr'd upon him in his Absence.

Q. What did he afterwards?

A. He pass'd over into *Greece* to find out *Pompey*, and having besieged him near \* *Dyrrachium* in *Albania*, he was so rudely receiv'd, and his Army beaten after such a manner, that if *Pompey* had known to make the best Use of his Victory, *Cæsar*, even in his own Confession, had been intirely defeated.

Q. Where did *Cæsar* March after this small overthrow?

A. He got his Troops together, and march'd towards *Thessaly*.

Q. Did any remarkable Action happen there?

A. Yes; for *Pompey* having pursued him thither, they fought in the Plains of *Pharsalia*.

Q. On which side fell the Victory?

A. *Pompey's* Army was totally routed. As for himself, he fled towards *Egypt* to *Ptolemy*, who was then very Young.

---

\* *Durazzo*.

Q. What

*Q.* What happen'd to *Pompey*?

*A.* As soon as 'twas known at Court, that he was ready to Land, *Theodotius* perswaded the King to murder him, in order to engage *Cæsar* to leave him in the quiet Possession of his Kingdom.

*Q.* And did *Ptolomy* suffer himself to be so perswaded?

*A.* Yes; for he immediately sent *Achillas* and *Septimius* to Receive and Compliment him on his part; and when they had him alone in a Cock-boat, they immediately assassinated him in the very sight of the Vessel where his Wife and Children were.

### *Of Seditions.*

*The Year of Rome 261, 303, 377.*

*Q.* **W**hat were the Causes of all those Seditions, that so often threatned the Commonwealth?

*A.* The Ambition, Pride, and Insolence of the Tribunes.

*Q.* How many of them have you observ'd in History?

*A.* Five Principal Ones.

*Q.* When did the first begin?

*A.* In the Year 261.

*Q.* What occasion'd it?

*A.* The Tyranny of the Usurers.

*Q.* How happen'd that?

*A.* The

*A.* The People being no longer able to endure their Cruelty, which proceeded so far as to treat them like Slaves, retir'd in Arms to the Sacred Hill: But being appeas'd by the Seasonable Discourse of *Menenius Agrippa*, who entertained them with the Fable of the Belly, and the other Members, they return'd to *Rome*.

Q. What Privilege did they then extort before they came back?

*A.* They obtain'd certain Magistrates to defend the People against the Violence of the Senators.

Q. How were these Magistrates call'd?

*A.* *Tribuni Plebis*, or the Tribunes.

Q. When began the Second Sedition?

*A.* In the Year 303.

Q. What occasion'd it?

*A.* The Arbitrary and Unlimited Power of the *Decemviri*.

Q. How came it about?

*A.* When these *Decemviri*, or Ten Men, who were chosen by the People to reduce the Laws they brought from *Greece* into one Body, had fully compriz'd them in the *Duodecim Tabulae*; yet they still kept up and maintain'd that Authority, which was only delegated to them for the Execution of this Design.

Q. What is remark'd of *Appius Claudius*, one of these *Decemviri*?

*A.* That his Insolence proceeded so far, as to carry off *Virginia*, with a design to Ravish her.

Q. What

Q. What became then of *Virginia*?

A. *Virginus*, the Father of this Young Woman, kill'd her with his own Hand in the *Forum*, as *Claudius* would have had her dragg'd off, after he had declared her his Slave.

Q. What Effects did this produce?

A. It stirr'd up all the People against the *Decemviri*.

Q. What did they do to them?

A. They put them all in Prison.

Q. What occasion'd the Third Sedition?

A. It happen'd upon the Subject of Marriages, the People being resolved it should be lawful for them to Marry with the *Patricians*.

Q. Where did this Tumult break out?

A. In the *Faniculum*, by the management of *Canuseius*, Tribune of the People.

Q. When did the Fourth Sedition begin?

A. In the Year of *Rome* 377.

Q. What was the Cause of it?

A. Ambition of Honours.

Q. Wherefore?

A. Because the People would be admitted to Publick Employments, as well as the Nobility.

Q. How did that happen?

A. *Lucius Stolo*, and *Lucius Sextius*, Tribunes of the People, having preferr'd a Law, which ordain'd that one of the Consuls should be always chosen out of the *Plebeians*; the Senators oppos'd it with all their Authority.

Q. And



Q. And the Tribunes on their side, what did they?

A. They hindred the making of any *Cu-*rule Magistrate, so that there was a sort of Anarchy in *Rome* for the space of Five years.

Q. Which of them carried the Point at last?

A. The People, and *Lucius Sextius*, was the first that was chosen out of their Body.

Q. What was the Cause of the Fifth Sedition?

A. The *Gracchi* occasion'd it by their endeavouring to re-establish the *Agrarian* Law.

Q. How did that happen?

A. *Tiberius Gracchus* being desirous to obtain the good will of the People, demanded to have the abovementioned Law put in Execution.

Q. What was the intent of that Law?

A. All the Citizens of *Rome* were by it forbidden to possess in Land, above Five hundred Acres.

Q. And what was their design in getting it reitor'd?

A. To enjoyn all those that possess'd any more to give their Lands up, and distribute them among the People.

Q. Did not all the Nobility vigorously oppose it?

A. Yes; but 'twas to no purpose, for this Law was authoriz'd by the Senate.

Q. And

Q. And what did he do afterwards?

A. He made his Colleague *Octavius* quit his Office, because he would have stopt the Execution of this Law.

Q. What happen'd to him at last?

A. This good Success having rendred him insupportably Proud, *Scipio Nasico* caus'd him to be Assassinated as he came out of the *Capitol*.

Q. Was not his Death revenged?

A. *Caius Gracchus*, his Brother, in order to effect it, promises the People to get them all that Wealth which *Attalus* at his Death bequeath'd to the *Romans*: The Senate was so highly provoked at his Arrogance, that they offer'd the weight of it in Gold, to any one that should bring his Head.

Q. What then became of *Caius Gracchus*?

A. He got one of his Slaves to kill him, finding himself pursued by the Consul *Opimius*; and he that found his Body, cut off his Head, took out his Brains, and fill'd it with melted Lead, to make it weigh the more.

Q. Besides these Five Seditions, do you observe no more?

A. Yes.

Q. Inform me concerning them?

A. *Posthumius* refusing his Soldiers the pillage of *Vole*, which he had promis'd them, a Sedition arose in the Camp, where he was stoned to Death.

Q. What

Q. What other Seditions can you recount to me?

A. Under *Appius Claudius*, the Roman Army would not vanquish that of the Enemies, altho it lay in their Power. There happen'd several little Mutinies, that don't deserve to be particularly mention'd.

Q. Give me some instance of the Distrust or Jealousy of the Romans.

A. They were so jealous of having the least Invasion made upon their Liberty, that they often sent the most Illustrious of the Nobility into Banishment, whenever they suspected that they design'd to arrogate too much Power to themselves.

Q. Pray give me an Example of it?

A. There was in the first place, *Coriolanus* banish'd for having served them too well; and *Camillus* was sent abroad for the same reason.

Q. Wherefore do they say *Camillus* was exiled?

A. Because the People were possess'd with an imagination, that this Great Man had not equitably divided the Booty taken from the *Vejentes*, between them and the Army; so they believed he had a design to secure himself of the Hearts of the Soldiers, in order to enslave the People.

Q. Give me one other Demonstration, I beseech you, that the Romans were so jealous of their Liberty.

F

A. They

*A.* They put *Spurius Cassius*, and *Spurius Melius* to Death, because they suspected them; the first for endeavouring to revive the *Lex Agraria*; the second for his Largeſſes or Donatives to the People.

*Q.* Who kill'd *Spurius Cassius*?

*A.* 'Twas his own Father that executed Justice upon him; and as for the other, *Servilius Abala*, General of the Horse, kill'd him in the midst of the *Forum*, by the order of *Quintius Cincinnatus*.

*Q.* And *Manlius*, how died he?

*A.* He was thrown headlong from the top of that very *Capitol*, which he had so generously defended.

*Q.* For what reason?

*A.* Because he had deliver'd several poor Debtors from the Clutches of their Creditors; 'twas observ'd he carried himself too high, and did not contain himself within the Bounds of a private Citizen.

*Q.* How many *Roman* Generals do you observe there were, that kill'd the Generals of the Enemies Army with their own hands?

*A.* Three; viz, *Romulus*, who kill'd *Acron*, King of the *Cecinians*; *Cornelius Cossus*, who kill'd *Tolumnius*, King of the *Veientes*; and *Marcellus*, who slew *Viridomarus*, King of the *Insubrian Gauls*.

*Q.* Recount to me the Action of *Curtius*?

*A.* In the Year 395. a Gulf appear'd in the middle of the *Forum*; and as 'twas impossible

fible to fill it up, altho they threw in never so much Wood, and Stones, and Earth, they had recourse to the Augurs.

Q. And what Answer did they give them?

A. That it would never close again, till the most precious thing in *Rome* was thrown into it. Now as they were strangely perplex'd to find it out; *Marcus Curtius* mounted on Horseback, and all in Armour rode into it, saying, That nothing was more precious than Arms, and Military Virtue.

Q. What was the design of *Catiline's* Conspiracy?

A. To kill *Cicero*, who was Consul, to set the City on Fire at the four Corners, to Plunder, and make themselves Masters of it; but this Plot was happily discovered.

Q. Who were concern'd in this Affair?

A. *Lentulus*, and *Cethegus*, and several other Senators.

Q. After this Conspiracy was discover'd what became of *Catiline*?

A. He was condemn'd to depart out of *Rome*; so he withdrew towards his Army.

Q. What was done to the other Conspirators?

A. They were all put to Death.

Q. What became of *Catiline* at last?

A. He was defeated, and his Army cut in pieces by *Petereius*, Lieutenant to *Antonius* the Consul, and himself kill'd upon the place.

# *A Chronological Table of the Emperors of Rome.*

*From Julius Cæsar to Augustus.*

**I**N the Year 705 of *Rome*, 4005 of the World, *Julius Cæsar* made himself Emperor, and was Assassinated in the Senate on the Day of the Ides of *March*, in the Year 710. He was perpetual Dictator but Three Years, Four Months, and Six Days.

*Augustus* took the Empire in the Year 711 of *Rome*; and in 724. after the Death of *Marc Anthony*, he was sole Emperor, and thus held the Empire Fifty seven years, and the Monarchy Forty three years. He died in the Fourteenth year of the Christian *Æra*.

Anno Dom.	Roman Emperors who Reign'd.	Years	Months	Days
14	<i>Tiberius</i>	22	6	
37	<i>Caligula</i>	3	10	8
41	<i>Claudius</i>	13	8	20
54	<i>Nero</i>	13	7	28
68	<i>Galba</i>		6	7
69	<i>Otho</i>		3	5
69	<i>Vitellius</i>		8	5
69	<i>Vespasian</i>	10		
79	<i>Titus</i>	2	2	2
81	<i>Domitian.</i>	15		6

These are commonly call'd the XII. *Cæsars*.

Here

Here follows the Catalogue of the rest.

Anno Dom.	Roman Emperors who Reign'd.	Years	Months	Days
96	Nerva	1	4	11
98	Trajan	19	6	15
117	Adrian	20	11	
138	Antoninus Pius	22	6	
161	Marcus Aurelius An- toninus	19		10
161	L. Verus	9		
180	Commodus	12	9	14
199	Pertinax		2	26
193	Julianus		2	5
193	Severus	17	8	3
211	Caracalla and Geta	6	2	5
217	Macrinus and his Son	1	2	
218	Heliogabalus	3	9	4
222	Alexander	13		9
235	Maximin and his Son	2		
238	Pupienus and Balbinus		10	
238	The Gordiani	6		
244	Philip and his Son	5		
249	Decius and his Son	3		
251	Gallus and Volusian his Son	2	4	
254	Valerian	6		
259	Galienus	8		
268	Claudius II.	2		
270	Aurelian	5		
270	Quintillus			15
275	Tacitus		6	6
275	Florianus		3	

Anno Dom	Roman Emperors who Reign'd.	Years	Months	Days
276	<i>Probus</i>	6	4	
282	<i>Carus</i>	1		
282	<i>Numerian</i> , slain in } the Year 284. }			
282	<i>Carinus</i> slain in 285			
284	<i>Diocletian</i>	20		
285	<i>Maximian</i>	18		
304	<i>Galerius</i> and <i>Con</i> } <i>stantius</i> }	2	3	25
306	<i>Constantine</i> the Great	30	9	27
337	<i>Constantine</i> , <i>Constance</i> , } and <i>Constantius</i> , } Brothers. }	25	5	13
361	<i>Julian</i> the Apostate	1	7	27
363	<i>Jovian</i>		7	22
364	<i>Valentinian</i> the Great		8	22
375	<i>Gratian</i>	7	9	12
383	<i>Valentinian II.</i>	8	8	21
392	<i>Theodosius</i> the Great		8	22
395	<i>Honorius.</i>	28	7	



Julius Cæsar *the first Roman Emperor.**The Year of the World 4005. Of Rome 705.*

Q. I Desire to be instructed in the Pedigree of Cæsar ?

A. He was descended of one of the most Ancient Families of *Rome* by his Mother's side; and of the Kings of that City by his Father's.

Q. What was his Mother's Name ?

A. *Aurelia.*

Q. Under whom did he learn the Art-Military ?

A. Under *Marius.*

Q. Where did he first carry Arms ?

A. In *Asia.*

Q. What sort of a Reputation had he there ?

A. A very bad one, occasion'd by his Lewdness.

Q. To whom did he particularly apply himself ?

A. To *Pompey* and *Crassus*, as being the most capable to advance his fortune, by reason of the great Interest they had in the Commonwealth.

Q. What was the first Office he was call'd to ?

A. To be *Ædile* with *Bibulus.*

Q. What was the next ?

*A.* He was *Censor* and *Pontifex Maximus* under the Consulate of *Cicero*.

*Q.* When was he made *Prætor*?

*A.* The year following.

*Q.* At his going out of the *Prætorship*, what did he next?

*A.* He obtain'd the Government of *Spain*?

*Q.* And what did he do there?

*A.* He perform'd several glorious Exploits which deserv'd a Triumph, but he preferr'd the Consulship to that Glory, and at last obtain'd it in the Year 695. by the Assistance of *Pompey* and *Crassus*, to whom he joyn'd himself.

*Q.* Being advanc'd to that high Dignity, what did he?

*A.* He distribut'd his Lands among the People of *Rome*.

*Q.* And what happen'd to him afterwards?

*A.* By his Artifices and excessive Liberalities, he so far establish'd himself in the good Graces of the People, that he procur'd the Government of *Gaul* to be conferr'd upon him?

*Q.* When did he go to take Possession of it?

*A.* In the Year 696.

*Q.* How long was he Governor there?

*A.* Nine years; during which time, he subdued all the Provinces that lye between the *Pyrenees*, the *Alps*, the *Rhine*, and the *Rhone*, and made them Tributary to *Rome*.

*Q.* Was

Q. Was not he the first *Roman* that adventur'd to pass the *Rhine*?

A. Right, and built a Bridge over it, to go and give Battel to the *Germans* who were on the other side.

Q. What other remarkable Things did he perform?

A. He made a Descent likewise upon *Britain*, which before him was unknown to the *Romans*.

Q. How often was Fortune contrary to him, during these Nine years.

A. Thrice: The first happen'd to him in *Britain*, where his Naval Forces had like to have been lost by a Tempest. The second in *Gaul*, where one of his Legions was intirely Defeated. And the third upon the Frontiers of *Germany*, where his Lieutenants fell into an Ambuscade, and were cut in pieces.

Q. Having plac'd good Governors in *Britain* and *Gaul*, what did he next?

A. He repass'd into *Italy*.

Q. And how was he received there?

A. Being at *Luca*, the Two Consuls, with above Two hundred Senators, and Four hundred Knights went to Congratulate him upon his great Conquests.

Q. What did he afterwards?

A. He demanded a Triumph, and the Consulship.

Q. Was it granted him?

*A.* No ; for *Pompey* being jealous of *Cesar's* Glory , so manag'd his Cabals, that they refused him both one and the other.

*Q.* How did *Cesar* bear this ?

*A.* The Person whom he sent to *Rome* to make this demand , sets his Hand to his Sword, and tells them, that what they refused him, *That*, meaning his Sword, would give him ?

*Q.* What follow'd upon this ?

*A.* *Cesar* marches towards *Rome*, at the Head of his Army, which had Conquer'd the *Gauls*, and passes the *Rubicon* , a small River, which parted that Government from *Italy*.

*Q.* What was done at *Rome* in the mean time ?

*A.* *Pompey* gets *Cesar* declar'd an Enemy to the Republick.

*Q.* And did this stop *Cesar's* Carriere ?

*A.* He continues his March to *Rome*, which was abandon'd by *Pompey* and his Party.

*Q.* Whither went *Pompey* ?

*A.* To *Brundisium*, from whence he escapes by Night into *Epirus*, where he was pursued by *Cesar*.

*Q.* Did not *Cesar* repass the *Adriatic* alone in a Fisherman's Boat ?

*A.* Yes ; and when the Master began to despond of safety, cheer'd him with *Quid times, Casarem vehis.*

*Q.* Was

Q. Was there a Battel fought between them?

A. At first *Pompey* had great Advantages over him, and had certainly ruin'd him, if he had known how to have used his good fortune.

Q. How then did he miscarry?

A. Instead of protracting the War, and starving his Enemy, which he might easily have done, he fights *Cesar* at *Pharsalia*, where he was totally defeated in the Year 706. After this, he flies towards *Egypt* to King *Ptolomy*; but before he reach'd the Shore, his Throat was cut in the Long-boat by *Achillas* and *Septimius*.

Q. Was it not in this Voyage that *Cesar* became passionately in love with *Cleopatra*?

A. Yes; but her Brother *Ptolomy*, who thought to have obliged *Cesar* everlastingly by dispatching of *Pompey*, finding himself not so well receiv'd as he expected;

Q. Resolved to destroy him, did he not?

A. Right, and besieged him in the Palace, where with a handful of Men, *Cesar* for a while kept off a Numerous Army; at last, by setting the Neighbouring Buildings on fire, where the finest Library in the World (which is supposed among a thousand other Curiosities now lost, to have had *Solomon's History of Plants*) was unluckily burnt to the ground, he makes his Escape to the *Pharos*, and from thence with his  
Sword

Sword in one hand, and his Commentaries in the other, Swims to his Fleet ; and after he had entirely defeated *Ptolomy's* Forces, who was drown'd in endeavouring to save himself by flight, he puts the whole Kingdom into the hands of *Cleopatra*.

Q. What Actions did *Cæsar* perform afterwards ?

A. He beats *Pharnaces*, Son to *Mithridates*, who had assisted *Pompey* with his Troops in *Thessaly*.

Q. What was remarkable in this Victory ?

A. 'Twas so easy and sudden, that *Cæsar* writ no more than these three Words to inform his Friends of it, *Veni, Vidi, Vici*. When this was done, he vanquishes *Juba*, King of *Mauritania*, who encouraged by *L. Scipio* and *Cato*, renewed the Civil War in *Afric*. Here he causes *Afranius*, and Three hundred Senators to be slain, who still continued to support that Party.

Q. After his return to *Rome*, what did *Cæsar* apply himself to ?

A. To reform the Calender, and accordingly added Ten days to the Year, which *Numa* had made to consist of only Twelve Lunar Months, that is to say, of 355 Days; whereas by *Cæsar's* new Alteration, it was made to consist of 365 Days, and 6 compleat Hours; reserving the six Hours to the end of every fourth year to make a compleat Day, which he placed before the 6th of the Calends of *March*.

Q. How

Q. How was the Year named which consisted of 366 Days ?

A. *Bissextile* ; because the Sixth of the Calends was twice reckon'd that Year. This manner of Computation was called the *Julian*, from *Julius Caesar* the Inventor of it.

Q. When was *Caesar* declar'd Perpetual Dictator by the Senate ?

A. After he had vanquish'd *Pompey's* Sons in *Spain*.

Q. What Honours did they pay him ?

A. A Temple was dedicated to him as to a God, which so far possessed him with Pride, that he slighted them, and began to set up for a Sovereign.

Q. Was not this the Cause of the Conspiracy that was form'd against him ?

A. Yes.

Q. Who were the chief Contrivers of it ?

A. *Marcus Brutus*, and *L. Cassius*, *D. Brutus*, and *Trebonius*.

Q. Was not his Death manifestly foretold by some strange Presages ?

A. Yes ; but he contemn'd and neglected them.

Q. What sort of Presages were they ?

A. Some months before his Death, a certain Astrologer, whose name was *Spurina*, told him, That the Ides of *March* would prove fatal to him. *Calpurnia* his Wife, the night before he was kill'd, dreamt that the Cieling of the House fell down, and that her Husband was murder'd between her Arms.

Arms. Nay, the very day he was assassinated, having order'd some Beasts to be sacrificed, he found them all defective.

Q. These Prognostics, and his own Indisposition, did they not make him consider with himself for some time, whether he should go out or no?

A. They made that impression on him, that he was once minded to put off what he had to propose to the Senate till another day; but at last, at the repeated instances of Brutus, who represented to him that aundance of the Senators were come to the House, and that they had waited for him a long time, he was prevail'd upon to go out about eleven in the morning.

Q. Being on his way thither, did not some Passages happen to him, which might very well incline him to return home?

A. *Spurina* the *Augur* met him to whom says *Cesar* with a laughing Countenance, *Well, Spurina, behold the Ides of March are come. Right,* said he, *but they are not yet past.* After that an unknown person presented him with a Petition in the streets, wherein he inform'd him of the Conspiracy; but *Cesar* mingled them among some other Papers, telling him he would see immediately what it contain'd.

Q. What befel him after this?

A. Being arrived to the Senate-House, he was accosted by one *Clodius*, under pretence of supplicating him to recal home a Brother of



( III )

of his, who had been banished some days before by a Decree of the Senate : But *Cæsar* refusing then to do it, and referring it to another time, *Cimber* seized upon the two sleeves of his Robe; and *Cæsar* crying out against this Violence, all the Conspirators, who had given one another the Signal, surrounded him, and stabb'd him.

Q. Who gave him the First Blow ?

A. One whose name was *Casca*, who wounded him a little below the Throat.

Q. What happen'd afterwards ?

A. *Cæsar*, who neither wanted Courage nor Vigor, seized upon his Ponyard, and made some effort to escape, but being at the same time run through in several places, and perceiving among the other Assassines *Marcus Brutus*, for whom he always express'd a mighty tenderness, he says to him in *Greek*, *What, you too, my Son !* and then covering his Head with his Robe, he fell down at the feet of *Pompey's* Statue, having received Twenty three Thrusts.

Q. What became of his Body ?

A. The whole Assembly immediately breaking up, his Body was carried to his own House by Three of his Slaves.

Q. Was he buried in any State ?

A. *Marc Anthony* celebrated his Funeral after a most magnificent manner.

Q. What did *Anthony* when he made his Funeral Oration ?

A. He

*A.* He caused *Cæsar's* Robe, which was still bloody, to be brought to him.

*Q.* And what said the people at this mournful sight ?

*A.* It so sensibly affected them, that they ran through all parts of the City with Torches in their hands, to burn the Conspirators Houses.

*Q.* What Remarkable Accident happen'd in this Confusion ?

*A.* One *Helvius Cinna*, a Tribune of the People, having the Misfortune to meet the Mob in the midst of their Fury, was cut in pieces, because they took him for *Cornelius Cinna*, one of the Assassines.

*Q.* What became of the Conspirators ?

*A.* The two *Brutus's*, *Cassius*, and the rest of them, seeing this terrible Disorder in *Rome*, left the Town, and retir'd to their respective Governments.

*Q.* Was any thing done in Honour to *Cæsar's* Memory ?

*A.* The People erected a Pillar to him in the *Forum*, Twenty Foot high, with this Inscription, *Patriæ Patri*.

*Q.* Did they do nothing else ?

*A.* They order'd the Gates of the Palace where he was murder'd to be walled up; that the *Ides of March* should for the future be call'd the *Parricidal Ides*; and that the Senate should never meet on that day.

*Q.* What was observable of these Murderers ?

*A.* That

*A.* That none of them died a Natural Death.

*Q.* How old was *Cæsar* when he was kill'd ?

*A.* Fifty six years, whereof he had reign'd five.

*Q.* Was he not much mortified at his Baldness ?

*A.* Yes ; because they often rallied him upon this account : For which reason he was always represented with a Crown of Lawrel.

*Q.* What sort of a Temper was he of ?

*A.* So strangely abandon'd to his Pleasure, that his open Familiarities with *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*, expos'd him to the Laughter and Invectives of the whole world. He was call'd Queen of *Bithynia* by *Bibulus*, who was his unactive, untalk'd-of Brother Consul.

*Q.* Was not he extremely given to Women ?

*A.* He debauch'd several, and those of the highest Quality, among the rest, *Posthumia* Wife to *Servius Sulpitius* ; *Tertulla* Wife to *M. Crassus* ; and *Mutia* Wife to *Pompey* : But the Lady with whom he was principally in Love, was *Servilia*, Mother of that *Brutus* who assassinated him.

*Q.* What Princess was it that he most passionately adored ?

*A.* *Cleopatra*, with whom he frequently spent whole nights a feasting ; nay, he had bore her company as far as *Æthiopia*, but that

that his Soldiers positively refus'd to follow him.

*Q.* Did not he carry her to *Rome* with him?

*A.* Yes; where he receiv'd her with all imaginable respect, and loaded her with innumerable Presents.

*Q.* Had he any Children by her?

*A.* He had a Son, whose Name was *Cesar*.

*Q.* What said *Cyris* of him?

*A.* *That he was the Man of all the Women, and the Woman of all the Men.*

*Q.* Was not he a man of Learning?

*A.* He was the most Eloquent man of his time. He has left behind him some Orations, with a Commentary of his Actions: He could *Write* and *Read* at the same time, and *Hear* what was said to him: He made nothing to dictate at once to Four Secretaries, nay sometimes to Seven, upon different occasions. His History, tho' ~~naked~~ and unadorn'd, is writ in a most Pure and Elegant Style, and has been valued by all Nations. *Henry* the Fourth of *France*, who resembled him in his Unfortunate End, as well as his Heroic Actions, translated that part of it into *French*, which related to the War of the *Gauls*. *Quintilian* says of him, *That he Spoke, Writ, and Fought, with the same Spirit.*

*Q.* How many Wives had he?

*A.* Four; *Cossutia*, *Cornelia*, *Pompeia*, and *Calpurnia*.

*Q.* From

Q. From whence was *Cossutia* descended ?

A. She came of an *Equestrian* Family, and was extremely rich ; but he repudiated her, to marry *Cornelia*. *Cornelia* was Daughter to *Cinna* ; by her he had *Julia*, who was afterwards *Pompey's* Wife. *Pompeia* was Daughter to *Claudius Pompey*, and Niece of *Sylla* ; he married her after the Death of *Cornelia*, but got himself soon divorced from her, upon a suspicion of her having committed Adultery with *Claudius*, in the Temple of the Goddess *Bona*.

Q. What was *Cesar* used to say of *Pompeia* ?

A. That it was not enough for a Woman to be chaste, but she must likewise take care to avoid all Suspicion.

Q. Who was *Calpurnia* ?

A. She was the Daughter of *Piso*.

Q. What Learned Writers were Contemporaries with *Julius Caesar* ?

A. *Lucretius* the *Epicurean* Poet ; *Salust* that admirable concise Historian ; *Tully* that excellent Orator ; and, not to mention any more, *Cornelius Nepos* the Biographer, or Writer of Lives ; and *Catulus* the Epigramatist.

Q. Give me the Portraiture of *Julius Caesar* ?

A. The Turn of his Face was Oval ; his Forehead smooth, a *Roman* Nose, Black Lively Eyes, his Lips large, his Complexion White and Lovely, of High Stature, the Fore-

Fore-part of his Head bald : His Constitution, which was naturally weak, he improv'd by continual Exercise ; his Humour was extremely pleasing, and his Conversation agreeable ; he had a strong Voice : There was something very Majestick and Noble in the Air of his Face : He was Easy with his Friends, Exact in his Military Discipline, Resolute in his Enterprizes, Indefatigable in time of Danger. He often march'd on foot, with his Head bare before his Soldiers, without fearing either the Rain or the Sun.

### *Augustus the Second Emperor.*

*The Year of the World 4011. Of Rome 711.*

**Q.** From whom was *Augustus* descended?

**A.** He was *Cæsar's* Kinsman, as being Son to *Accia* the Daughter of *Julia*, who was *Cæsar's* Sister.

**Q.** Where resided he, when *Cæsar* made him his Heir ?

**A.** He followed his Studies at *Apollonia*, a City of *Macedonia*.

**Q.** Who was it that took *Augustus's* part against *Anthony* ?

**A.** *Cicero*, because he refus'd to give him *Cæsar's* Will, upon the score of his being too young.

**Q.** What course did *Anthony* take ?

**A.** He

*A.* He left *Rome* with an Army which he had got ready, and went to besiege *D. Brutus* in \* *Mutina*.

*Q.* What did the *Romans* do in this Juncture?

*A.* *Hirtius* and *Pansa* the two Consuls, with *Octavius Caesar*, on whom was conferr'd the Title of *Proconsul*, marched immediately against him with an Army.

*Q.* Upon this Advice how does *Anthony* manage his Affairs?

*A.* He raises the Siege to meet them, and so both Parties came to blows.

*Q.* Was it a bloody Battel?

*A.* The two Consuls indeed lost their Lives there: However, *Anthony* was intirely routed, and *Brutus* set at liberty.

*Q.* After this defeat, whither went *Anthony*?

*A.* He was forced to fly to save his Life, and pass'd the *Alpes* with a small Retinue.

*Q.* Where did he retire for Protection?

*A.* He made his Applications to *Lepidus* Governor of *Gallia Transalpina*.

*Q.* What methods did *Octavius* take, after he heard of the strict Alliance between *Anthony* and *Lepidus*?

*A.* He was desirous of coming into the same Confederacy, being disgusted at the Senate for refusing to make him Consul.

*Q.* How was this New League called?

---

\* *New Modena*.

*A.* The second *Triumvirate*.

*Q.* And what did *Octavius* after he was thus reconciled to *Marc Anthony* ?

*A.* He prevails with him to come into *Italy* with *Lepidus* to confer together.

*Q.* Where was this Interview made ?

*A.* In a small Island between *Modena* and *Bologna*, where all three met.

*Q.* What Resolutions did they here fall upon ?

*A.* *Octavius* promis'd *Anthony* to marry his Sister-in-Law.

*Q.* Was it not likewise concerted to revenge themselves to the utmost upon the Murderers of *Cæsar* ?

*A.* Yes ; and they divided all the Forces, and all the Provinces of the Empire between themselves.

*Q.* How did they divide the Empire ?

*A.* They resolv'd that *Anthony* should have all *Gaul*, except the Province of *Narby*, the Government of which fell to *Lepidus*'s share, as did that of *Spain* ; and that *Cæsar* should command *Afrie*, *Sicily*, and the other Isles.

*Q.* Who had the Charge of the War against *Brutus* and *Cassius* ?

*A.* *Cæsar* and *Marc Anthony*.

*Q.* What bargains did they make in relation to their mutual Enemies ?

*A.* *Augustus* basely abandon'd *Cicero* to the Indignation of *Anthony* and he for his part abandon'd his own Uncle to the resentments of *Octavius* ; *Lepidus* had a Brother  
named



named *Paulus*, whom he left to the discretion of the other two.

*Q.* Why was *Cicero* proscrib'd by *Anthony*?

*A.* Because he had cruelly gall'd him with those bitter *Invectives* the *Philippics*; which *Oration*s were so called, in imitation of *Demosthenes*, who had formerly handled King *Philip* after the same free manner.

*Q.* Relate to me the manner of *Cicero's* Death.

*A.* He was slain by an ungrateful Monster, whose name was *Popilius*, whom he had formerly defended. This profligate wretch having pursued him as he was going to make his escape into *Greece*, cut off his Head and his Hands; which *Anthony* afterwards nail'd to the \* Place where the *Orators* made their *Harangues*.

*Q.* What became of the other two?

*A.* *Paulus* made his Escape; and *Lucius Caesar* sav'd himself by the cunning of his Sister, who having stop't those that were sent to murder him at the gate, gave him an opportunity to slip out at the back door.

*Q.* Do you know the number of the proscrib'd?

*A.* They were about Three hundred *Senators*, and Three thousand *Roman Knights*.

*Q.* When the *Proscriptions* were over, what did *Cesar* and *Anthony* do?

---

\* The *Rostra*.

*A.* They

*A.* They march'd against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, and left *Lepidus* in *Rome*.

*Q.* Where was the Battel fought ?

*A.* In *Thessaly*, near the City of *Philippi*.

*Q.* Which way did the Success incline ?

*A.* At first *Cassius* was beaten back by *Anthony*, and *Cesar* by *Brutus* ; but a false Alarm being given on one side, the equality soon vanished. *Cassius*, who for his part had been forc'd to give way, imagining that *Brutus* was in the same condition, kill'd himself.

*Q.* And what became of *Brutus* ?

*A.* Having made a gallant opposition to *Cesar* and *Anthony* for some time, he was at last defeated, and fearing to fall into his Enemies hands, made away with himself.

*Q.* What did *Anthony* do with the Ashes of *Brutus* ?

*A.* He sent them to his Mother in a small Vessel of Silver.

*Q.* And how did *Porcia* his Wife receive the News.

*A.* Being inform'd her Husband was dead, she was resolv'd no longer to survive him, so she dispatch'd her self by swallowing burning Coals.

*Q.* But after this Victory, did not *Cesar* and *Anthony* fall out again ?

*A.* They quarrel'd about some Domestic Concerns.

*Q.* Was not the difference afterwards made up between them ?

*A.* Yes,

A. Yes, by *Anthony's* marrying *Octavia* the Sister of *Cæsar*.

Q. After this Accommodation what happened to *Anthony*?

A. He went into *Asia* to meet his beloved *Cleopatra* there.

Q. And where was *Cæsar*?

A. He came back to *Italy*, where he fell out with *Lucius Antonius*, Brother to the *Triumvir*, and made War against him.

Q. And how did it succeed on his side?

A. Having forc'd the other out of *Rome*, and shut him up in *Perusium*, he soon obliged him to surrender himself.

Q. What does *Lepidus* in the mean time?

A. He endeavours in spite of *Cæsar* to make himself Master of *Sicily*, after they had taken it out of the hands of *Sextus Pompeius*.

Q. And how did *Cæsar* requite him for his pains?

A. He turn'd him out of the *Triumvirate*, and banish'd him to a small City, where he spent the remainder of his life in private.

Q. What did *Anthony* do to please *Cleopatra*?

A. He discarded *Octavia*, and married that Charming Queen of *Egypt*.

Q. And what follow'd upon this Marriage?

A. Being desirous to present her with the Empire of the whole World, he declares War against *Cæsar*, who was already but

too much provoked against him for this last Action.

Q. Where was this important Battel fought?

A. At *Adium*, a Promontory of *Epirus*; where the last Century the famous Battel of *Lepanto* was fought between the *Venetians* and the *Turks*, wherein the Infidels were beaten.

Q. How many Ships were there on both sides?

A. *Cesar* had Four hundred, but *Anthony* had no more than Two hundred.

Q. On which side fell the Victory?

A. In the midst of the Engagement, when as yet the Success on both sides was equal enough, on the sudden *Cleopatra* possess'd with fear, flies towards *Egypt*, which *Anthony* perceiving, leaves the Battel to run after this Fugitive, tho no less a stake than the Empire of the World depended upon it. But *Cesar* pursued him, and laid Siege to *Alexandria*.

Q. What became of *Anthony*?

A. Finding himself irrecoverably lost, he kill'd himself.

Q. And *Cleopatra* how came she off?

A. Having resolv'd not to adorn the Triumphs of *Cesar*, she follows *Anthony's* Example, and stings her self to Death with Serpents.

Q. At what time was *Cesar* the Master of the whole World?

A. In the year of *Rome* 725, and the 12th. year after the Triumvirate.

Q. Did

Q. Did not our Blessed Saviour come into the world under the Reign of *Augustus*?

A. Some Chronologers place his Birth 15 years before the death of *Augustus*, the 3985<sup>th</sup>. year after the Creation of the world, and the 753<sup>d</sup>. from the Foundation of *Rome*, in the Consulate of *Cornelius Lentulus*, and *Calpurnius Piso*: But others that have examin'd the matter more exactly, place it under the Consulate of *Antistius Verus*, and *Laelius Balbus*, in the year of *Rome* 747, and the 38<sup>th</sup>. year of *Augustus*.

Q. Had *Augustus* no Sons to bequeath his Empire to?

A. No.

Q. To whom did he leave it then?

A. He adopted *Tiberius* the Son of his Wife *Livia*, and at her importunity made him Heir of the Empire, upon condition that he should adopt *Germanicus* the Son of *Drusus*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Fifty seven years he possessed the Empire, and held the Monarchy or single Government by himself Forty three years. He died at *Nola* in *Campania* in *Italy*.

Q. How many Wives had *Augustus*?

A. Three; *Claudia*, *Scribonia*, and *Livia Drusilla*.

Q. Had he no Children by *Scribonia*?

A. He had *Julia*, a Lady of no extraordinary Reputation.

Q. Who was *Claudia*?

*A.* Daughter-in-Law to *Anthony*, whom his Wife *Fulvia* had by her former Husband *Claudius*.

*Q.* Whom of the Three did he most passionately love?

*A.* *Livia Drusilla*.

*Q.* After what manner did he marry her?

*A.* He took her from her Husband *Tiberius*, and married her tho she was big with child.

*Q.* What do Historians particularly remark of *Augustus*?

*A.* That he was of so sweet a Temper, that when a certain person came to present a Petition to him, and as he offer'd it thew'd a great deal of Fear, he pleasantly reproach'd him, saying, *That he tender'd him a Paper after the same manner as people use to give meat to Elephants.*

*Q.* And don't they observe, that he was a great Admirer of the Fair Sex?

*A.* As he particularly lov'd them, his Empress was so complaisant to him, as to furnish him with them from all Quarters.

*Q.* Who were his most intimate Friends?

*A.* *Agrippa* and *Mecenas*.

*Q.* What was the latter remarkable for?

*A.* He was descended from the Kings of *Etruria*, and was a most Munificent Patron to all the celebrated Wits of that Age, particularly to *Virgil* and *Horace*.

*Q.* What is it that Historians remark farther concerning him?

*A.* 'Twas

*A.* 'Twas observ'd of him, that when the Affairs of State requir'd Application and Diligence, no one could be more industrious than he. At other times, when he had no business upon his hands, he wholly abandon'd himself to all sorts of Pleasure and Effeminacy. From these two qualities so remarkable in him, his Encouragement of Learning, and his Inclination to a Voluptuous Life, *Mæcenat* afterwards came to signify both a Patron and an Effeminate Person.

Q When did the *Latin* Tongue principally flourish?

*A.* All are agreed that it arriv'd to its greatest Purity in the time of *Julius Cæsar*, and *Augustus*. In the following Ages, what by adopting too many *Greek* Words into their Language, and what by the continual Irruptions of the *Northern* Nations, it sensibly declin'd; and about the Sixth Century after our Saviour, was totally disus'd at *Rome*.

Q What men of note liv'd in his time?

*A.* So many, that 'tis a difficult matter to recount them. To begin with those that writ in *Greek*, at this time flourish'd *Diodorus Siculus*, who spent Thirty years in the Capital City of the World to collect Memoirs for his *Historical Library*; and that most excellent Historian and Critic *Dionysius Halicarnassius*; Then *Titus Livius*, born at *Padua*, whose Wit, *Seneca* says, was equal to the Greatness of the *Roman* Empire. *Virgil* the Prince of Epic, *Horace* of Lyric, *Ovid* of Elegiac Poetry.

*Cornellus Gallus, Tibullus, and Propertius*, with several more of eminent Note, too numerous to be here inserted, all lived in his time. In short, never did the *Roman Arms* and *Eloquence*, with all the *Inferior Sciences*, as *Musick, Statuary, Painting, &c.* so universally triumph, as they did in the *Augustean Age*.

Q. Did *Augustus* make any progress in the reducing of *Britain*?

A. He wholly neglected it, either because he believ'd it would scarce answer the Expence, or because he thought it not advisable to enlarge the Limits of the *Roman Empire*, but contented himself with those which Nature had prescribed to it, viz. the *Ocean*, the *Rhine*, and the *Euphrates*.

Q. Was not the Temple of *Janus* shut in his time?

A. All Authors agree, That it was now the third time shut by *Augustus* in the year 730; after it had been the first time shut by *Numa*, and the second time a little after the first *Punic War*.

Q. What was the greatest Loss he sustain'd?

A. *Quintilius Varus* had Three Legions cut in pieces by the *Germans* under their General *Arminius*; which so disturbed him, that he was often heard to say, *Quintili Vare, redde mihi Legiones*.

Q. Had he any inclinations to be intemperate?

A. No;



*A.* No; for in his greatest Debauches he never exceeded his Six Glasses; and as for eating, he sate any where down to Dinner, let the place be never so homely, if he had an appetite.

*Q.* Was he not superstitious?

*A.* Yes; and when it thunder'd, (of which he was strangely afraid) he generally carried the Skin of a Sea-calf to preserve himself.

*Q.* How did he respect his Son-in-Law *Agrippa*, and the two *Julia's*, the Mother and the Daughter?

*A.* He used to wish, That he could have lived without Wives, and died without Children, whom he frequently call'd his Three Imposthumes.

*Q.* What sort of a Man was he?

*A.* His Hair was white, and somewhat frizzled, his Complexion brown, but clear and smooth, his Eyebrows arched, and almost join'd, a *Roman* Nose, his Mouth well made, small Teeth, but somewhat spoil'd, and a short Chin. his Eyes black and great, a little greenish and full of fire. His Body was marked with small spots, his Stature below the common. There appear'd in his Face something agreeably Majestic and Charming, which deservedly gave him the Name of *Augustus*, and hinder'd a certain *Gaul* of Quality, who had resolv'd to throw him into a Precipice as he pass'd the *Alpes*, from pursuing his design. He was of a lively Imagination,

gination, a clear Sprightly Wit, and a prodigious Memory.

*Tiberius the Third Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 754. Of the Birth of J. C. 14.*

Q. **W**Hose Son was *Tiberius* ?

A. The Son of *Livia* and *Tiberius Nero*. He was Fifty five years old when he came to the Empire.

Q. What sort of a Prince was he ?

A. His chief Talent lay in dissimulation, and he was universally hated for his Cruelty, his Covetousness, his Debaucheries, and his Pride.

Q. But how did he behave himself in the beginning of his Reign ?

A. He conceal'd all his Faults from the world with admirable address and dexterity.

Q. What obliged him to stand so much upon his guard ?

A. Because he was afraid of *Germanicus*, Son to his Brother *Drusus*, whom he had adopted.

Q. And how did he serve him at last ?

A. He dispatch'd him out of the way, because he was jealous of his growing Merits.

Q. After what manner did he accomplish his design ?

A. He sends this Prince, who had already by his Valour and Conduct ended the Wars of

of *Germany*, into the *East*, to beat back the *Parthians*.

*Q.* And what way did he take there to destroy him ?

*A.* He conferr'd the Government of *Syria* upon *Piso*, who being a mortal Enemy to *Germanicus*, poison'd him in the year of *Rome* 772.

*Q.* Was it not discover'd afterwards that he was poison'd ?

*A.* Yes ; and *Agrippina*, Wife to *Germanicus*, accus'd *Piso* of the Fact, who knowing himself to be guilty, prevented his Condemnation by a voluntary death.

*Q.* When did *Tiberius* give the full stretch to his Cruelties ?

*A.* After the death of his Mother *Livia*, which happen'd much about this time.

*Q.* With whom did he begin to exercise his barbarous Temper ?

*A.* By poisoning *Drusus Caesar* his Son ; after this he starv'd to death *Nero* and *Drusus* the Children of *Germanicus*, and all this by the advice of his great Favourite *Sejanus*.

*Q.* How did this *Sejanus* behave himself after he became so Absolute ?

*A.* He committed a thousand Crimes ; and his Insolence carried him so far as to say, That he was Emperor of *Rome*, and that *Tiberius* was only Prince of *Caprea*, a small Isle near *Naples*, where he used to retire. But his Pride did not last long.

*Q.* What Accident befel him ?

G 5

*A.* After

*A.* After he had suffer'd a thousand Indignities, he was strangled by the hand of the Common Hangman, his Body dragg'd about the streets, and his whole Family executed with him.

*Q.* What remarkable Passage was it that happen'd between *Tiberius* and the Astrologer *Tbrasilus*?

*A.* *Tiberius* had resolv'd one day to throw him headlong into the Sea, as he was walking along with him; so he asked him if he knew what sort of death, and when he should dye? *Tbrasilus* answered him, That he knew nothing precisely of that matter, but this he was sure of, That he was never in so great danger in his life, as he was at that moment.

*Q.* Did not this Answer wholly alter *Tiberius's* Resolution?

*A.* Yes, he sav'd him, and after this reposed a mighty confidence in him.

*Q.* Did not the Crucifixion of our Blessed Saviour happen under his Reign?

*A.* It fell out in the 18th. year of his Empire.

*Q.* Did not *Tiberius* propose it to the Senate to place him among the gods whom the Romans worshipp'd?

*A.* Yes.

*Q.* And did the Senate give their consent to it?

*A.* No; because it was forbidden by the Laws of the Twelve Tables to receive any Foreign gods.

*Q.* When

Q. When did *Tiberius* dye?

A. He died in the 77th Year of his Age, after he had reign'd Two and twenty years, Six months.

Q. Was not *Caligula* supposed to hasten his Death?

A. Yes.

Q. How did he manage it?

A. By over-loading him with Blankets, under a pretence of making him warm.

Q. Where was *Tiberius* at that time?

A. He was in the Isle of *Capree*, where he had no other Witnesses of his Lewdness, than those who had their share in the same Crimes, wallowing in all sorts of brutal Lusts, and in some manner forgetting he was Emperor.

Q. By what Nick-name was he publicly called?

A. *Caprinus*, alluding to the Isle of *Capree*, and his Lasciviousness.

Q. What remarkable Curiosities had he in that Island?

A. He had Chairs and Closets of his own Invention to exercise his Lewdness.

Q. What things were farther observable in his House?

A. He had several Chambers furnish'd with lascivious Pictures and Statues, where were to be seen the Books of *Elephantis*, fill'd with immodest Postures.

Q. What Learned Men flourish'd in his Time?

A. *Vellains*.

*A. Velleius Paterculus*, who writ an Abridgment of the *Roman History*, and is so universally admired for the peculiar Beauties of his Characters. *Valerius Maximus*, who has given us an Excellent Collection of Memorable Stories digested under proper Heads. Some place *Quintus Curtius*, the Writer of *Alexander's* Life under his Reign, taking him to be the same Person whom *Suetonius* mentions as a Rhetorician, and *Tacitus* as Proconsul of *Afric* under that Emperor. But others make him Contemporary to *Vespasian*; and some to have lived under the Reign of *Trajan*.

*Q.* What remarkable Things happen'd in his time.

*A.* The first President of burning of Books began under him. For *Cremutius Cordus* having in one of his Books, call'd *Brutus* the last of the *Romans*, *Tiberius* orders the Author to be put to Death, and his Books to be burnt in the *Forum*. *Ovid* too died in his Exile in *Pontus*, in this Emperors time.

*Q.* How many Wives had *Tiberius*?

*A.* Two: *Agrippina*, the Daughter of *Agrippa*; and *Julia*, the Daughter of *Augustus*.

*Q.* What sort of a Man was he?

*A.* The Features of his Face were regular and well, his Complexion white but pimpled, a melancholy Air, a fierce Look, great Eyes, the fore-part of his Head bald, a stinking Breath, large Shoulders and Breast,

Breast, a grave Gate, his Stature of a prodigious Tallness.

### *Caligula the Fourth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 777. Of the Birth of J. C 37.*

Q. From whom was *Caligula* descended?

A. He was the Son of *Germanicus* and *Agrippina*, and Nephew to *Tiberius*.

Q. Where was he Born?

A. In *Germany*, in the Camp, and was brought up among the Soldiers, who gave him the Name of *Caligula*.

Q. For what reason?

A. Because he wore little Boots, after the Soldier's fashion; for Boots in *Latin*, are call'd *Caligæ*.

Q. How old was he when he came to the Empire?

A. Twenty five years old.

Q. Were not the People extremely pleas'd at his Elevation to this Dignity?

A. Yes; hoping he inherited all his Father's Virtues, as indeed he appear'd to be a Prince of very good Qualities.

Q. Did not he manage himself very well at the beginning.

A. He express'd so much Tenderness and Moderation, that he rais'd the Expectations of all *Italy*. All those Persons, who for fear of *Tiberius* had absconded, now left their Holes and walked abroad. He recall'd

call'd those that were banish'd, and abolish'd the greatest part of the Imposts and Taxes.

Q. Did this continue long?

A. No; for soon after he wholly changed his manner of Life, and resign'd himself up to Cruelty, Lewdness, and all sorts of Bestiality.

Q. What particular Acts of Cruelty are recorded of him?

A. He fill'd *Rome* with the Blood of the Principal Men of the Empire; nay, he abused his own Sisters.

Q. What was his common saying?

A. He frequently wished the People of *Rome* had but one Head.

Q. Why so?

A. That he might have the pleasure of cutting it off, and destroying all the *Romans* at one stroke.

Q. When his Sister *Drusilla* was dead, what respect did he pay to her Memory?

A. He caus'd a Temple to be erected to her, as if she had been a Goddess.

Q. How did he serve those that lamented her Death, and those that express'd no Sorrow at all for it?

A. He indifferently commanded them both to be put to Death.

Q. For what pretence?

A. The first, because they envied *Drusilla's* happiness, whom he had so lately enroll'd in the number of the gods: And the latter,



latter, because they did not bewail the loss of so amiable a Princess.

Q. How far did his Pride and Arrogancy carry him?

A. He commanded himself to be adored as a God, and would needs have Temples built to him in all places. He pretended that the *Moon* was mightily fallen in love with his Person, and that she frequently came down to Caress him.

Q. How did *Vitellius* rally him upon that Subject?

A. Why, says he, when you gods are together, we poor men are not able to see what you are a-doing.

Q. To what other monstrous Extravagances did his folly lead him?

A. He made his Horse be declared Consul in full Senate; he banish'd *Livy's* Statue and Writings from all Libraries; he gave *Virgil* the same Treatment, and would have suppress'd the Verses of *Homer*, pretending his Power ought to be no less than *Plato's*, who had prohibited the Reading of them in his Imaginary Republick. Lastly, as he hated *Seneca*, and all men of Eminent Virtue, it came into his head to abolish not only the Laws, but all the Living Oracles of them, the most celebrated Lawyers.

Q. Had not he a mighty Ambition to ride a Horseback over the Sea?

A. To accomplish this unaccountable Frolick, he built a Bridge of Gallies from *Naples*

*pales* to *Baie*, which is reckon'd to be more than four Miles.

Q. And what noble Pranks did he play upon this Bridge?

A. He magnificently feasted all such whom their Curiosity had brought thither, and afterwards caus'd them to be thrown into the Sea.

Q. Having quitted *Rome* to go and fight the *Britains*, what fine Employment did he set his Army upon?

A. He only made them gather Cockle-shells, and with these Spoils he came back to *Rome*.

Q. After what manner did he receive those that came to see him?

A. He only gave them his Foot to kiss.

Q. In his Buildings, what did he chiefly affect?

A. To force Nature, and attempt Impossibilities.

Q. How spent he those prodigious Sums which *Tiberius* had gather'd?

A. In levelling Mountains and Vallies.

Q. How was his Death?

A. He was kill'd by *Cassius* and *Sabinus*, a Captain of the Guards.

Q. How long did he Reign?

A. Three Years, Ten Months, and Eight Days.

Q. What became of *Cesonia*, his Wife, and his Daughter?

A. His

*A* His Wife was likewise Assassinated, and they dashed out the Brains of the little Daughter he had by her, against a Wall.

*Q.* What found they in his Cabinet after his Death?

*A.* A Book wherein he had writ down the Names of all those whom he design'd to put to Death; and a Coffer, wherein there was so great a quantity of Poyson, that having thrown it into the Sea, they saw the Shore next Morning cover'd with dead Fish.

*Q.* What Writers of Note flourish'd in his time?

*A.* *Appion* the Grammarian, for his insupportable Vanity, call'd the *Cymbalum Mundi*, and that most Eloquent Platonist, *Philo Judæus*, a Jew.

*Q.* How many Wives had *Caligula*?

*A.* Four: *Junia Claudilla*, *Livia Orestilla*, *Lollia Paulina*, and *Cætonia*.

*Q.* What sort of a Man was he?

*A.* Of tall Stature, bright Hair, the top of his Head bald, his Forehead high, large, and wrinkled; his Looks fixt and stern; his Eyes sunk in his Head; hollow Temples; a pale Complexion; a great Belly, Neck, and Legs; his Body all over cover'd with Hair; he was a great Master of Musick, and had an extraordinary fine Voice; he was very adroit and dexterous at handling his Arms, Dancing, and cleverly turning a Chariot.

Claudius

*Claudius the Fifth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 781. Of the Birth of J. C. 41.*

Q OF what Family was *Claudius* the Chief?

A. He was Son to *Drusus*, the Brother of *Germanicus*, Uncle of *Caligula*, and Nephew of *Tiberius*.

Q. How came he to be Elected Emperor?

A. At that very time, when the Senators were deliberating whether they should chuse any more Emperors, or re-establish the Commonwealth upon its Ancient Bottom, some Soldiers broke into the Palace, with a design to Plunder it.

Q. And did they Rife it accordingly?

A. No; for happening to find *Tiberius Claudius Nero* there, who hid himself for fear of being kill'd, they carried him immediately to the Camp, and proclaim'd him Emperor.

Q. What was his true Character?

A. That he was a Prince without Vice, but had no manner of Spirit or Conduct.

Q. By whom did he suffer himself to be intirely govern'd?

A. By his Wife, and Freed men.

Q. What do Historians particularly tell us of his Wife *Messalina*?

A. She

A. She caus'd the greatest part of her Gallants to be put to Death, when they were no longer able to satisfy her brutal Passion.

Q. Among the rest, did she not cause *Silanius* to be assassinated, who was one of the handsomest Gentlemen of *Rome*?

A. Yes; and the reason was, because he refused to gratify her Lust.

Q. A strange Monster of an Empress this; but what is farther observable of her?

A. That she could not see a well-made beautiful Actor upon the Stage, but she immediately became passionately in Love with him.

Q. What end came she to at last?

A. *Claudius*, who had tamely bore all these Injuries so long, at last wakens out of his Lethargy, and causes her with her Adulterer *Caius Silius*, to be kill'd.

Q. What provoked him to it?

A. While he was but a days Journey distant from *Rome*, his Rampant Empress publicly Marries this *Roman Knight*, and makes him Consul.

Q. How many Children had he by *Messalina*?

A. *Britannicus* and *Octavia*.

Q. After *Messalina's* Death, whom did he Marry?

A. His Niece *Agrippina*, Daughter to his Brother *Germanicus*, and the Mother of *Nero*, whom she had by *Domitius*.

Q. What

Q. What sort of a Woman was this *Agrippina*?

A. A Princess of a great Spirit.

Q. What remarkable Thing is recorded of her?

A. She established a *Roman* Colony in *Germany* upon the *Rhine*, from her call'd *Colonia Agrippina*; 'tis now call'd *Colen*.

Q. When for the gratifying her Ambition, she consulted the Oracle to know what her Son's fortune would be, what answer did she receive?

A. That he would be Emperor indeed, but then would certainly Murder her.

Q. And what said she to this Prediction?

A. It signifies nothing so long as he reigns.  
*Occidat modo imperet.*

Q. What did *Claudius* dye of?

A. He was poyson'd by *Agrippina*, who gave him some Mushrooms to eat.

Q. Why did she serve him so?

A. Because he would not declare her Son his Successor in the Empire.

Q. Did this Poyson carry him off?

A. No; but it made him extremely Sick.

Q. Who then hasten'd his Death?

A. His Physician thrust a poyson'd Feather down his Throat, under a pretence of making him vomit up his Mushrooms.

Q. How long did he Reign?

A. Thirteen years, Eight months, and Twenty days.

Q. When

Q. When *Claudius* was dead, what did *Agrippina* do to *Britannicus*?

A. he shut him up, for fear the *Romans* should hate him to succeed.

Q. And what did *Nero* do in the mean while.

A. He was at the Camp, and got himself proclaim'd Emperor?

Q. Did *Nero* bury *Claudius* magnificently?

A. Yes; and prevail'd to have him Canoniz'd by a Decree of the Senate.

Q. How many Wives had *Claudius*?

A. Six: *Lepida*, *Camilla*, *Urgulanilla*, *Petina*, *Missalina*, and *Agrippina*.

Q. How many Children had he?

A. He had by *Urgulanilla* *Densus* and *Claudius*; by *Petina* *Anconia*, and by *Missalina* *Octavia* and *Britannicus*.

Q. Describe me the Person of *Claudius*?

A. The Corners of his Eyes were full of little red Veins, his Stature was Tall, his Body well-proportion'd, a good Countenance, his Mien Majestick, his Voice was harsh and disagreeable, his Mouth full of Spittle, and his Nose always dropping. he had a very bad Memory, and a phlegmatick heavy Soul.

## Nero the Sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 794. Of the Birth of J. C. 54.

Q I Desire to be inform'd of Nero's Genealogy?

A. He was the Son of Domitius Ænobarbus and Agrippina.

Q. How old was he when he came to the Empire?

A. Sixteen years old. Seneca was his Master. and Burrus his Governor.

Q. What remarkable Things do Historians tell of him?

A. Being one day oblig'd to Sign a Dead Warrant for a Criminal, he seem'd to be touch'd with so much Compassion, that he wish'd he could not write. *O quam vellem me nescire literas.*

Q. Which was his principal Vice?

A. Cruelty.

Q. With whom did he begin to exercise that barbarous Quality?

A. He first poysons Britannicus.

Q. What farther barbarous Acts did he commit.

A. He put his Mother Agrippina to Death, after he had for a long time before stript her of all Authority, nay, and turn'd her out of Court.

Q. After he had caus'd her to dye, what did he more?

A. He



*A.* He had a mind to behold her all naked as she lay, and brutally said, That he did not think his Mother had been so fine a Woman.

*Q.* Did he make any farther Progresses in his Barbarity?

*A.* He took away *Otho's* Wife, named *Poppea Sabina*; he repudiated *Octavia*, and afterwards put her to Death; and shortly after, he kick'd the abovemention'd *Poppea* so that she died of it.

*Q.* Was no Conspiracy form'd against him?

*A.* *Piso* contrived one against him, and had engaged several Gentlemen in it, but *Nero* happening to discover the Author and his Accomplices, among whom were the Poet *Lucan* and *Seneca*, he put them all to Death.

*Q.* Wherein did his Vanity chiefly lye?

*A.* He mightily valued himself for playing well upon the Harp in the Theatre, and Singing his part with the Comedians: Nay, he made a Voyage as far as *Greece*, to let the *Grecians* see he was a good Musitian, and a good Actor.

*Q.* Who was it he married instead of a Woman?

*A.* *Pythagoras* his *Libertus*, or Freedman.

*Q.* Had he not a Natural Inclination to mischief?

*A.* He

*A.* He was so strangely inclin'd that way, that he frequently said King *Priam* was the happiest Prince in the world, for having the satisfaction to see his Country all in Flames, before he lost his kingdom.

*Q.* Had he not a great fancy to represent the burning of *Troy* by that of *Rome*?

*A.* One night he distributed his Guards through all parts of the City, and commanded them to set the Houses on fire; which they so diligently executed, that in a short time the whole Town was in a flame.

*Q.* Where was *Nero* all this while?

*A.* Upon *Mecenas's* Tower, from whence he beheld the Fire, and sung some of *Homar's* Verses upon the Destruction of *Troy*.

*Q.* Whom did he charge with this Action?

*A.* As he had a mortal hatred to the Christians, he accused them with having set the City on fire, and put several of 'em to death for it.

*Q.* Was it not he who began to persecute them first at *Rome*?

*A.* Right; and made them suffer Torments which till that time were unknown.

*Q.* Was not *Armenia* taken by one of his Generals?

*A.* *Domitius Corbulo*, sufficiently famous for conquering the *Frisians*, took and burnt *Artaxata* the Metropolis of the Country, beat out the *Parthians*, and sent *Tiridates* to *Rome*, where he received a Diadem from *Nero*: Yet after all these considerable Services,

ces, being sent for into *Greece* by *Nero*, he was forced to lay hands on himself, to prevent a more ignominious death.

Q. Was this Tyrant beloved by his Subjects?

A. No; for so many Crimes having drawn upon him the Contempt and Hatred of the whole Empire, *Vindex* a Roman Senator, and Governor of *Gaul* revolted first against him, and declared *Galba* the Governor of *Spain*, Emperor.

Q. In the mean while was *Rufus* the Governor of *High-Germany* unactive?

A. He enter'd *Gaul* with a powerful Army to join *Vindex*.

Q. And what happen'd upon this?

A. His Army, which knew nothing of his intention, fell upon that of *Vindex*, and cut it to pieces.

Q. What did *Vindex* do when he saw this?

A. Imagining that *Rufus* had betray'd him, and inrag'd at the intire loss of his Troops, he out of despair kill'd himself.

Q. What was the upshot of all?

A. The *German* Army join'd the small remainder of the *Gaulish*, and then *Rufus* declar'd *Galba* Emperor.

Q. Was not *Nero* terribly alarm'd at this Revolt?

A. Instead of preparing himself for a Battel, he resolv'd to make his Escape into *Egypt*, saying, he could get his Livelihood any where by his Acting and Singing.

H

Q. How

Q. How did his Guards behave themselves, seeing him so strangely pusillanimous?

A. They all forsook him.

Q. Whither then did *Nero* retire to save himself?

A. He stole privately out of *Rome*, and hid himself in a Cave.

Q. When the Senate perceiv'd that, what Resolutions did they take?

A. They declar'd him at the same time an Enemy to the People of *Rome*, condemn'd him to dye, and sent out Soldiers every where to go and apprehend him.

Q. Well, what befel him at last?

A. Finding there was no hopes to preserve his wretched life any longer, and yet not having Courage enough to hasten Death with his own hands, he desir'd *Epaphroditus* one of his Free'd-men to kill him, who broke his Ponyard as he endeavour'd to do him that kindness, but at last made a shift to dispatch him.

Q. Was not *Nero* the last Emperor of the *Augustean* Family?

A. Yes.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. One and thirty, having reign'd 13 Years, 7 Months, 28 Days, on the very same day whereon he had formerly commanded his Wife *Octavia* to be assassinated.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Three; *Octavia*, *Poppea*, and *Statilia*.

Q. What remarkable Accident happen'd in his Reign?

A. \* *Lug-*

A. \* *Lugdunum*, a famous Colony in *France*, was in the space of one night burnt down to the ground; and so as an Ancient Writer handsomely express'd himself, *Inter magnam urbem & nullam vix horarum aliquot spatium fuit.*

Q. What Learned men flourish'd at that time?

A. *Seneca*, and *Lucan*, the Uncle and Nephew, whom *Nero* caus'd to be put to death for being concern'd in *Piso's* Conspiracy: The former an Excellent Philosopher; and the latter, if he had been Master of a solid Judgment, as he was of Flame and Spirit, a most Admirable Poet. Then *Persius* the obscure Satyrist; and *Silius Italicus*, who compos'd a Poem about the Punic War; *Epicærus* the Moralist, slave to *Epaphroditus*, one of *Nero's* Free'd men; and *Petronius Arbiter*.

Q. Who was this *Petronius Arbiter*?

A. An *Epicurean* by profession, and Comptroller of *Nero's* Pleasures, who made profession of a cultivated polite Luxury; for Purity of Style and Wit scarce to be match'd by any of the *Roman* Writers. Tho he was one of the Emperor's greatest Confidants, yet falling at last into Disgrace with him, he bled himself to death, and at his last moments caus'd some delightful Verses to be repeated to him.

Q. What sort of a man was *Nero*?

A. His Visage was Full, and Red, but

---

\* Lyons.

not agreeable ; his Hair of a Chesnut Colour, falling down in Rings ; he was short-fighted, his Eyes blue and sunk in his head, his Neck and Belly large, his Skin very bad, and his Stature indifferent.

### *Galba the Seventh Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 808. Of the Birth of J. C. 68.*

Q. BY whom was *Galba* declared Emperor?

A. By his Army ; but his over-great Severity was the reason why he did not continue long in the possession of the Empire.

Q. Did he find no manner of opposition?

A. He was scarce arrived at *Rome*, when he receiv'd advice, that *Vitellius* the Governor of *Germany* was proclaim'd Emperor by his Army.

Q. What measures did he take to maintain his Authority ?

A. He adopted *Piso* a man of great Merit, because he was apprehensive he should never have any Children by reason of his great Age.

Q. Was not *Otho*, this Emperor's intimate Friend, offended at this Adoption ?

A. It so much disgusted him, that he rais'd the *Prætorian* Bands against the Emperor, who had a great love for him, because every evening as he went out of the Palace, he distributed some Money among them.

Q. Ha-

Q. Having gain'd the affection and good will of the Soldiery, what did he next?

A. He immediately went to the Camp, and got himself to be proclaim'd Emperor. After this he placed himself at the head of the Guards, who kill'd *Galba*, and cut off his head.

Q. What did they do with his Head?

A. They carried it to *Otho*, who told them they did nothing in murdering of *Galba*, unless they clear'd their hands of *Piso*, which was almost as soon executed as advis'd.

Q. How old was he when they kill'd him?

A. Seventy two years old; and he reign'd six months, and seven days.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Only one, whose name was *Lepida*.

Q. What sort of a man was *Galba*?

A. He was neither big nor little, he had a Roman Nose, Black Eyes, a Bald Head, a Long Visage, and full of Wrinkles.

### *Otho the Eighth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J. C. 69.*

Q. **W**HAT was *Otho's* Character in the world?

A. He was a debauch'd man, who surrender'd up his own Wife to *Nero*, in order to make his Fortune at Court by it.

Q. How did *Vitellius* the Governor of Germany employ himself?

*A.* Having been proclaim'd Emperor by his Soldiers, as we have already mention'd, he marched towards *Italy* with a great Army, and there defeated *Otho* at the Battel of *Bebriacum*.

*Q.* Where was this Battel fought?

*A.* Near *Placentia*.

*Q.* What course did *Otho* take when he heard of the defeat of his Army?

*A.* He despair'd of repairing his Loss, and so resolv'd to kill himself. His Friends dissuaded him from the design, and represented to him what fair expectations he had of meeting better success next time, since he was still Master of *Italy* and *Asia*, from whence he might easily furnish himself with considerable Forces.

*Q.* And what Answer did he make 'em?

*A.* He said, That for his part he thought it more advisable to quit the Empire to *Vitellius*, than to be the occasion of shedding so much blood: So he advised them to repair immediately to the Conqueror, that so they might the sooner obtain pardon of him.

*Q.* And what did he do at last.

*A.* He slew himself, after he had burnt all the Letters which had been writ to him, and might bring his Friends into danger.

*Q.* How old was he then?

*A.* He was Eight and thirty years old, and had reign'd Three Months, and Five Days.

*Q.* Describe me his Person?

*A.* He



*A.* He was of Low Stature, his Head bald, his Legs crooked, and the Features of his Face much resembling *Nero's*.

*Vitellius the Ninth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J.C. 69.*

*Q.* What sort of a man was *Vitellius*, as to his Temper?

*A.* He was one that made a god of his belly, and thought of nothing else but eating and drinking.

*Q.* What remarkable Action happen'd under his Reign?

*A.* *Valens* and *Cecinna* defeated *Otho's* Army in *Italy*.

*Q.* Where was *Vitellius* at that time?

*A.* He attended the Success of the War at *Lyons*, where he minded nothing but feasting and revelling.

*Q.* Where did he steer his course after he was inform'd that his Generals had got the Victory.

*A.* He march'd directly to *Rome*, where he profusely squander'd away all the Money he found in the Treasury; and his continual Drunkenness made such a Beast of him, that sometimes he would forget he was Emperor.

*Q.* When he was arriv'd there, what did he do?

*A.* He banished all the Astrologers and Fortune-tellers out of *Rome*.

H. 4

*Q.* Where

Q. Where was *Vespasian* at that juncture?

A. He was making War against the *Jews*, in quality of Lieutenant-General to *Otho*.

Q. What happen'd to him there?

A. He was extremely importun'd by his Army to give his consent for them to declare him Emperor.

Q. And did he hearken to this Proposal?

A. It was not without great difficulty he was prevail'd upon to comply with them, but at last he gave his consent.

Q. Who assisted him in this Undertaking?

A. *Mucianus* the Governor of *Syria*, and all the Princes of the *East*.

Q. Whom did he intrust with the management of the *Jewish* War?

A. His Son *Titus*.

Q. And whither did he himself march?

A. After he had dispatch'd his Lieutenants to *Rome* with a great Army, he went for *Egypt*.

Q. Was not *Vitellius* strangely surprized, when he heard of the general defection of the people from him?

A. He seem'd not to be much concern'd at the News, but contented himself with only sending his Lieutenants against *Vespasian*, who defeated them.

Q. Did not this Overthrow oblige *Vitellius* to march in person against the Enemy?

A. Right; but he was so little accusom'd to the Fatigues and Hardships of War, that

that he return'd back to *Rome* to his Pleasures.

Q. At his Arrival there, what measures did he take?

A. He made a Treaty of Peace with *Sabinus* the Governor of *Rome*.

Q. What were the Conditions of this Treaty?

A. That he should surrender the Empire into the hands of *Vespasian*.

Q. Were not his Guards extremely incens'd at his making so tame a Resignation?

A. It very much displeas'd them, because they lov'd *Vitellius* upon the account that he gave them liberty to do what they would.

Q. What happen'd in this Contest?

A. The Capitol was burnt down to the ground, as it had been once before in the bloody Disputes between *Sylla* and *Marius*.

Q. What became of *Vitellius* at last?

A. He had the misfortune to be taken by the Captains of *Vespasian's* Army, and dragg'd naked through the City with a great deal of Ignominy.

Q. What did they do to him after this?

A. They cut his Throat, and afterwards threw him into the *Tiber*.

Q. How old was he then?

A. He was 57 Years old, and had only reign'd 8 Months and 5 Days.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Two; *Petronia* and *Galeria*.

Q. How was he made?

H 5

A. He

*A.* He was of an extraordinary Stature, his Belly prodigiously big, and a very Red Face.

*Vespasian the Tenth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J. C. 69.*

*Q.* **W**hen was *Vespasian* crown'd Emperor?

*A.* 'Twas after the Death of *Nero*, who had sent him into *Judea* to chastise the Insolence of certain Rebels, where he took several small Towns.

*Q.* By whom was he proclaim'd Emperor?

*A.* By his Army; and after he had left his Son *Titus* in *Judea*, and put all the Forces there into his hands, with the whole management of the War, he came back to *Rome*.

*Q.* And how order'd he his Affairs there?

*A.* He put *Vitellius* to death, who as we told you before, had made himself Master of the Empire.

*Q.* After what manner did he deport himself in his Government?

*A.* With infinite Justice and Sweetness.

*Q.* What Transactions fell out in the second year of his being Emperor?

*A.* The *Jewish War*, which some turbulent Seditious Spirits had kindled under *Nero's* Reign, was ended.

*Q.* Who

Q. Who was the Ringleader of the Faction ?

A. Eleazer the Son of *Ananias*. Religion furnish'd them with a pretence to rebel, and the people were easily induc'd to it, because the *Romans* had made a terrible slaughter of their Countrymen.

Q. Who was it that laid Siege to *Jerusalem* ?

A. *Cestius Gallus*, the Lieutenant of *Syria*, but he was forced to raise it ignominiously, with a considerable loss of his Forces.

Q. At what time did this happen ?

A. In the 12<sup>th</sup>. year of *Nero's* Empire, and the 65<sup>th</sup>. of our Saviour.

Q. Whither did the *Jews* march after this Victory ?

A. They returned to *Jerusalem*, where they chose new Leaders, and among the rest *Josephus* the Son of *Mattathias*, in the year 67 of *Jesus Christ*.

Q. What did *Vespasian*, who was afterwards sent by *Nero*, do ?

A. He took several Towns, and *Josephus* himself, who foretold that he should be elected Emperor.

Q. Did *Vespasian* then besiege *Jerusalem*, the Capital City of the *Jews* ?

A. Yes ; but the Death of *Nero*, and the Murder of the following Emperors, interrupted the Siege.

Q. What was the Conclusion at last ?

A. In the year 70. of J. C. at the Feast of

of the Passover ; and on the fifth of *April*, after a Siege of four months continuance, this famous Temple was burnt, and the City abandon'd to plunder.

*Q.* What follow'd upon the loss of *Jerusalem* ?

*A.* The name of the *Jewish* People was abolish'd, and their Miseries were so excessively great, that 'tis certain God Almighty reveng'd upon this perfidious Nation the Unjust Death of his Son.

*Q.* What Calamities did they sustain ?

*A.* There was so terrible a Famine during this Siege, that the besieged were forced to feed upon the vilest things imaginable, man's flesh not excepted ; nay, some Mothers were reduced to such straits as to eat their own Children.

*Q.* Without question they lost a world of men in this Siege ?

*A.* About Eleven hundred thousand souls perish'd there ; which is almost an incredible thing.

*Q.* What became of the City ?

*A.* It was raz'd to the ground by *Titus's* order ; and according to our Blessed Saviour's Prediction, there was not one stone left upon another. The *Jews* that remain'd were carried away Prisoners.

*Q.* What happen'd in the Third Year of *Vespasian's* Reign ?

*A.* This Emperor and his Son triumph'd over the *Jews*, and afterwards he laid the  
Foun-

Foundation of the Temple of Peace.

Q. What particular things did he do to advance his Glory after this War was over?

A. He begun a Noble Amphitheatre, which *Augustus* had a great desire once to build.

Q. After what manner did he end his days?

A. Being at the point of death, he rais'd himself on the sudden, and cried out, *Oportet Imperatorem stantem mori*, An Emperor ought to dye standing.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. He was Sixty nine years old, he reign'd Ten years within Ten days, and hasten'd his Death by drinking too much cold water.

Q. Pray give me a Description of him.

A. He was of an indifferent Stature, but thick, his Visage red, his Shoulders large, his Constitution vigorous, his Looks cheerful, his behaviour courteous, a War-like Mien, his Temper civil, but covetous.

Q. Was it not he that gave occasion to the Proverb, *To shooe a Mule*?

A. Yes.

Q. How did it happen?

A. Being once in the Countrey, a man who desir'd to speak with him, gave some Money to the Muleteer who conducted his Litter, to stop it, and make as if he was going to shooe his Mule.

Q. Did

Q. Did not the Emperor smell out the trick?

A. He immediately gave Audience to the man that had a desire to talk with him, but ask'd his Muleteer how much Money he got by shoeing his Mule?

Q. Was he not constrain'd to lay several Taxes upon the people?

A. Yes; because his Predecessors had by their Luxury quite exhausted the Publick Treasury.

Q. Was it not he that laid an Excise upon Urine?

A. Yes. by the same token that his Son taking occasion to remonstrate to him that this Excise was dishonourable, *Vispasian* takes a Piece of Gold out of his Pocket, holds it to his Nose, and asks him whether it smelt ill or no.

Q. What answer did he make?

A. He told him, No. *And yet for all that,* says the Emperor, *this very Piece came from the Excise upon Urine.*

### Titus the Eleventh Emperor.

*The Year of Rome 819. Of the Birth of J. C. 79.*

Q. WHO was Titus?

A. The Son of *Vispasian*.

Q. How did he behave himself in the beginning of his Reign?

A. He immediately quitted the Natural Pro-



Propensity he had to Lewdness, and treated every one with that sweetness, that he was called *The Love and Delight of all Mankind*.

Q. What were the first Instances he gave of his Clemency?

A. He pardon'd two Persons of Quality who had conspir'd against him; he likewise pardon'd his Brother *Domitian*, who had form'd a second Conspiracy against him, and instead of punishing him, declared him his Successor in the Empire.

Q. How died he?

A. His Brother *Domitian*, notwithstanding he had pardon'd him before, dispatch'd him by Poison, when he was aged Forty one years, and after he had reign'd Two Years, Two Months, and Twenty Days.

Q. What other demonstrations did *Titus* give of his Mercy?

A. 'Tis said he never refus'd any thing which was asked of him; and would frequently say, That a Prince ought not to send back any of his Subjects sad or discontented from his presence.

Q. What is besides reported of him?

A. One Night as he was at Supper, he remembered himself that he had done good to no body that day, *My Friends*, says he to those that were about him, *I have lost a Day, Diem perdidit*.

Q. What remarkable Passages happen'd during his Reign?

A. A prodigious quantity of Fire and  
Ashes

Asbes broke forth from *Vesuvius*, which were thrown as far as *Afric*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*.

Q. Did not this Irruption do a great deal of damage?

A. *Pliny* the Elder being desirous to behold this terrible Spectacle, was suffocated by the Flames, and several Cities were ruin'd by it.

Q. What was it that *Titus* said as he was going to dye.

A. That he only repented himself of one thing, but did not expresse what it was: 'Tis imagin'd that it was because he had not put his Brother *Domitian* to death, and clear'd the Empire of so wicked and cruel a Monster.

Q. Had he not a great value for the Senate and People of *Rome*?

A. Yes; for tho he was passionately in Love with Queen *Berenice*, yet he refused to marry her, because he thought the Senate and People of *Rome* would disapprove of the Match.

Q. What sort of a man was he?

A. He was of the common Stature, the Features of his Face very good, his Belly somewhat of the largest; of a courteous Behaviour, a sweet insinuating Mien, a Noble Air, which inspir'd all those that beheld him both with Love and Respect.

*Domitian the Twelfth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 821. Of the Birth of J. C. 81.*

Q. **W**Hose Son was *Domitian*?

A. He was the Son of *Vespasian*, and younger Brother to *Titus*.

Q. Was he like his Father?

A. No; and much less did he resemble his Brother *Titus*, since he was one of the most profligate Monsters that ever lived, and was not inferior to *Nero* in Cruelty, Avarice, and Incontinence.

Q. In what did he chiefly excel?

A. He was so great a Master at his Bow, that he would frequently order a man to be set with his hand stretch'd out, and his Fingers open, and then he would shoot between his fingers, and never touch him.

Q. What was his constant Occupation?

A. He pass'd whole days in his Closet alone, where he diverted himself with the Royal Sport of Fly-catching.

Q. Did not some-body rally him upon this occasion?

A. A certain Person of Quality having one day asked, Who was with the Emperor in his Closet? answer was made him, That not so much as a Fly was with him.

Q. Did he perform any Warlike Expeditions?

A. He

A. He triumph'd twice over the *Daci* and the *Catti*.

Q. Who was his chief Confident?

A. One *Martial*, whom he particularly affected; I don't mean the Poet of that name, but another to whom that Poet addresses several of his Epigrams.

Q. To what extravagant Actions did his Folly lead him?

A. He must needs pass for a god, and so commands several Statues of Silver and Gold to be erected to his own Honour.

Q. What other strange Frolicks did he play?

A. Being minded one day to put the Senators into a dismal Fright, he invited a great number of them to come and sup with him.

Q. Well, and when they came there, how were they receiv'd?

A. He orders them to be lock'd up in a Hall hung with Black, and only lighted by a few Lamps, by the light of which they could discern several Coffins, upon each of which were written the names of those that were invited.

Q. Did not this terrible Scene possess them with strange apprehensions?

A. Yes; for after they had continued some time in these cruel imaginations, some naked persons whose Bodies were blacken'd all over, entred the Hall with Swords in one hand, and flaming Torches in the other.

Q. Did

*Q.* Did they not give themselves all for lost ?

*A.* Yes ; but after these black men had danced a pretty while about them , they open'd the doors , saying, The Emperor gave all the Company leave to withdraw.

*Q.* What was *Domitian's* usual way to make himself remember the Names of those whom he design'd to put to death ?

*A.* He writ their Names down in a Table-Book, but it cost him very dear ; for having among several others set down the Names of his Wife *Domitia* , *Norbanus* , *Petronius* , and *Stephanus* ;

*Q.* What happen'd upon it ?

*A.* *Domitia* , who very well knew the Table-Book , having accidentally lighted upon it one day, she shew'd it to those persons whose Names were written down there, as well as her own, in order to oblige them to concert matters with her, and dispatch *Domitian*.

*Q.* How was *Domitian's* end ?

*A.* *Stephanus* stabb'd him with a Ponyard in his Closet ; but the Guards running in immediately to his assistance, they soon kill'd *Stephanus* among them.

*Q.* What was *Apollonius Tyanæus* a-doing at the moment when this happen'd ?

*A.* He harangu'd the people of *Ephesus*, but stop't himself in the midst of his Discourse ; and after he had continued silent for some time, he cry'd aloud, *Courage, Stephanus,*

nus, *Strike the Tyrant* ; and a moment after, says he, *The Tyrant is dead, he is just now slain.*

Q. What else do Historians remark of *Domitian* ?

A. He persecuted the Christians throughout the whole *Roman Empire*. 'Twas he that banished *St. John* into the Isle of *Patmos*; tho others lay it upon *Nero*, which is the more probable of the two.

Q. What Learned Writers flourished in his time ?

A. That Sonorous Enthusiastic Poet *Statius* ; *Martial* the Witty Epigrammatist ; *Juvenal* the declaiming Satyrist ; that celebrated Institutor of Youth *Quintilian* ; *Musonius* the Philosopher ; *Apollonius Tyanæus*, a notorious Impostor and Pretender to Miracles ; that most excellent Historian *Josephus*, who has writ the Antiquities of his own Countreymen : And for the Art Military, there was *Julius Agricola*, who sailed round *Great Britain*, by him conquer'd, and was the first *Roman* that discover'd it to be an Island. He found and subdued the *Orkney Islands* : But notwithstanding these great services, *Domitian* dispatch'd him by Poison.

Q. How old was this Emperor when he was slain ?

A. He was Forty four years old, having reign'd Fifteen Years and six days.

Q. Pray give me a Description of him ?

A. He was lusty and well-proportion'd, he had a handsome Nose, large Eyes, he was

was weak-sighted, and had a Face as Red as Scarlet.

*Nerva the Thirteenth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 836. Of the Birth of J. C. 96.*

Q. WHO was this *Nerva*?

A. He was a Person of Quality who deriv'd his Original from *Narni*, a City scituated in the Province of *Umbria*.

Q. What Character had he in the World?

A. He had the Reputation of a most Excellent Prince.

Q. What considerable things did he do in the beginning of his Reign?

A. He cancell'd all the Edicts that had been made in *Domitian's* time.

Q. How old was he when they elected him to the Empire?

A. He was Sixty five years old.

Q. What other Proofs did he give the people of his Clemency and Generosity?

A. He restor'd all persons to their Possessions which they had been plunder'd of by *Domitian*, and gave leave to all those whom he had banish'd, to return to their Native Countrey. Among the rest, say some, *St. John* the Evangelist, who suffer'd Exile in the Isle of *Patmos*, came back to *Ephesus*, of which City he was Bishop.

Q. What remarkable Oath was that which *Nerva* swore?

A. He

A. He solemnly swore before the Senators, That he would put not one of them to Death, tho they gave him never so just an occasion.

Q. And did he keep his Oath ?

A. He so religiously observ'd it, that two of them having conspir'd to take away his Life, he would not suffer them to dye ?

Q. What did he do to them then ?

A. He sent for them to let them see he was not ignorant of their Design against him; he carried them with him to the Theatre, placed them on each side of him, and then gave both of them a Ponyard, telling them before all the world, That they might try u. on him whether they were good or no.

Q. What is commonly said of him ?

A. That he wanted Authority to suppress the Insolence of his Soldiers ; and his extreme Old Age render'd him contemptible.

Q. What method did he take to make himself more Absolute than he was ?

A. He preferr'd *Trajan*, who at that time commanded the Army in *Germany*, before all his Relations, and adopted him to the Empire.

Q. Did *Nerva* live a long while after this Adoption ?

A. No ; he died Three Months after, being compleatly Sixty six years old.

Q. Of what Distemper did he dye ?

A. Of a Feaver, which he got by straining his Voice too much, in talking to one

*Regulus*,



*Regulus*, who had put him into a Passion.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. One Year, Four Months, and Eleven Days.

### Trajan the Fourteenth Emperor.

*The Year of Rome 838. Of the Birth of J. C 98.*

Q. **W**hat Countryman was *Trajan*?

A. He came from *Sevil* in *Spain*.

Q. Where was he when *Nerva* adopted him to the Empire?

A. At *Colen* in *Germany*, and was the first Foreigner that got possession of the *Roman* Empire.

Q. Who was his Master?

A. *Plutarch*.

Q. What sort of a man was he?

A. He was one of the greatest Generals that ever sat upon a Throne: He was Sweet-temper'd, Merciful, and Prudent: Nay, he was so charitable to his Soldiers who were wounded in his Wars with the *Dacians*, that he tore off his own Shirt from his Back to bind up their Wounds, when they had no Linnen of their own.

Q. What considerable Actions did he perform?

A. He defeated the *Dacians*, and their King *Decebalus*, over whom *Domitian* Triumph'd at *Rome*, tho he scandalously bought a Peace of him; he subdued

subdued *Armenia*, *Iberia*, and *Colchis*; he overthrew the *Sarmatians*, *Astrenians*, and *Arabians*, with the Inhabitants of the *Bosphorus*.

Q. What other Conquests did he make?

A. He attack'd the *Parthians*, and took from them *Armenia*, *Persia*, *Seleucia*, *Babylon*, and reduced a very considerable part of *Asia*, under the *Roman Power*.

Q. Was not he firnam'd *Germanicus*?

A. Yes, for the glorious Exploits he perform'd in *Germany*.

Q. Did not several persons come to congratulate him upon his many Victories?

A. Ambassadors visited him from all parts of the world; nay, some came from as far as the *Indies* to compliment him upon those occasions.

Q. What remarkable Presents were made him?

A. He was presented with a Horse from *Armenia*, which fell down upon his knees as often as he went to mount him.

Q. By what other Actions did he increase his Reputation with the People?

A. He utterly exterminated those insufferable Vermin in a well-order'd Commonwealth, the *Delators* and *Informers*, who had made so fine a Harvest on't under the Reigns of *Domitian*, *Nero*, *Caligula*, and *Tiberius*.

Q. What remarkable Accidents happen'd in his time?

A. There

A. There was so prodigious an Earthquake at *Antioch*, while he and the whole Court lay there, that the City was almost totally destroyed.

Q. And how did *Trajan* make a shift to save himself?

A. He escaped through the Windows of the Room where he lay.

Q. Where died he?

A. At *Selinus*, a City of *Cilicia*, whither he ordered himself to be carried.

Q. What respect was paid him after his Death?

A. His Ashes were brought to *Rome*, and placed in a Golden Urn on the top of a Pillar of a prodigious Height and curious Workmanship, which he had caus'd to be erected in the publick Place, and which is to this day call'd *Trajan's Pillar*.

Q. How long did he Reign?

A. Ten years Six months and Fifteen days; he lived Sixty three years.

Q. What remarkable things do you find in his Reign?

A. Two: The first of them was the unparallel'd Confidence he repos'd in one of his Friends, whose Name was *Sura*.

Q. How did he make it appear?

A. Some Persons, who envied him for the great share he possess'd in the Emperor's Friendship, strove by all imaginable means to blast his Reputation, and render him suspected to his Master. They accus'd  
I him

him with forming a Design against his Life; but *Trajan* to let them see how far he relied upon the Honesty of his Friend, having received an Invitation to Sup with him, went thither freely.

Q. Well, and what did he do there?

A. After he had sent back his Guards, he orders *Sura's* Physitian and Barber, to be call'd to him; the former he commands to take off the Hair about his Eye-brows, and the latter to shave his Beard. After this, he goes to a Bath, and then sits down very unconcerned with the rest of the Company.

Q. What said he to his Friends next Morning?

A. He recounted to them every thing in order as it passed, and told them, That if *Sura* had any Intentions to kill him, he gave him the fairest opportunity the day before to do it, that a man could wish; and since he had neglected it, it was an infallible indication that he had no such design in his head.

Q. What is the second remarkable thing?

A. *Trajan* in giving his Sword to the Colonel of the Guards, according to the usual Custom, utter'd these glorious Words, *Take this Sword, and if I govern like a Just Prince, employ it in my Service; but if I abuse my Authority, draw it against me.*

Q. What added he afterwards?

A. That he who gave Laws to the rest of the World, lay under greater Obligations

ons to observe them, than any of his Subjects.

Q. What Title did the *Romans* bestow upon him?

A. They gave him the Sir-name of *Optimus*.

Q. Was not his Memory exceeding dear to Posterity?

A. It was held in so great esteem, that in succeeding Times, when an Emperor was promoted to this high Dignity, amidst the other Acclamations that were made in the Senate-house, they used to wish that he would prove as happy as *Augustus*, and as good as *Trajan*.

Q. What answer did he make his Friends, who were Reproaching him one day with his too great Condescension and Good nature?

A. That he lived with his Subjects, just as he would have wished them to live with him, if they had been the Masters.

Q. What Faults or Vices do you observe in him?

A. Two very great ones. The first, that he was given to excessive Drinking. The second, that he loved young Boys.

Q. What was his Wife's Name?

A. *Plotina*, who in some Ancient Medals is represented with a very tall Head-dress, much resembling the Modern *Commodes*.

Q. What Learned Men flourish'd in his time?

*A. Plutarch* of *Cheronea*, that admirable Philosopher and Biographer. *Pliny* the Younger, who in his Panegyrick upon *Trajan*, which he deliver'd in the Senate-house when he was Consul, gives us the true Exemplar of an Excellent Orator, as well as he does of a good Prince. *Suttonius*, who has writ the Lives of the Twelve first *Cæsars*, with the same freedom as they lived them. *Lucius Florus*, who hath left us a pretty Compendium of the *Roman* History, tho justly censur'd for too much affecting pointed Sentences. And lastly, *Cornelius Tacitus*, a Sublime and Grave, tho sometimes Obscure Historian, famous for his Reflections, and the good Sense of his Observations, which will always preserve their Reputation in the World, especially with those Persons that intend to study Politicks.

Q. Was not he severe against the Christians?

A. He rais'd a Cruel Storm against the Professors of that Religion; and among the rest, *Ignatius*, Bishop of *Antioch*, suffer'd, being torn in pieces by Wild Beasts. At last, having receiv'd a favourable Account of the Simplicity of their Worship, their Innocence, and Morals from *Pliny* Junior, in an Epistle, which is still extant, the Persecution abated.

*Adrian the Fifteenth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 857. Of the Birth of J. C. 117.*

Q. **W** Ho was this *Adrian*?

A. Cousin of *Trajan*, and his Country-man, for he was a Native of an Italian City in *Spain*.

Q. How came he to be made Emperor?

A. By the cunning Management of *Plotina*, the Wife of *Trajan*.

Q. But how did she carry on this Affair?

A. As soon as the Emperor was dead, she sent a forged Declaration immediately to the Senate under his hand, whereby he adopts *Adrian*, and declares him his Successor. In the mean time she dexterously conceals his Death, till *Adrian's* Adoption was confirm'd by the Authority of the Senate.

Q. Did *Adrian* make any Conquests?

A. So far from that, that he devoted himself wholly to Peace, and abandon'd *Assyria*, *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, to the *Parthians*.

Q. What do Historians remark of him?

A. That he loved to be always Travelling abroad.

Q. What Reasons did he alledge for so doing?

A. He used to say, That a Prince ought to imitate the *Sun*, who carries his Light  
I 3 through

through all the Corners of the World, and illuminates all the Regions of the Earth.

Q. How many Years did he spend in Surveying the Empire?

A. Thirteen.

Q. And what observable things are reported of him, during this long Progress?

A. He separated the *Britains* from the *Picts*, by a Wall Forty Leagues long, which took up the whole breadth of the Island, and reached from the *German-Ocean* to the *Irish-Sea*; it was likewise fortified by a Ditch of the same length.

Q. Wherefore built he this prodigious Wall.

A. To secure the *Britains* from the Insults of the *Picts*, who were so call'd from painting their naked Bodies, to make them look the more terrible to their Enemies.

Q. What did he besides?

A. He gave a King to the *Germans*, who were upon the point of Revolting, because he did not look upon himself to be in a Capacity to retain them in their Duty by force.

Q. How did he treat the *Armenians*?

A. He remitted the Tribute they were obliged to pay to the *Roman Emperors*, and gave them leave to Elect a King of their own.

Q. What respect was it he show'd to the Memory of *Pompey*?

A. Having



*A.* Having seen his Tomb in *Egypt*, which was below the Dignity of so great a man, he caused a very Magnificent Sepulchre to be erected to him.

Q. Did not the Jurisconsults or Lawyers; principally flourish under his Reign?

*A.* They did, and *Julian* composed the Perpetual Edict by the Emperor's Command, to serve as a Rule to all the Prætors that administered Justice in *Rome*. It was call'd *Edictum Perpetuum*, because it was to continue in force for ever.

Q. After what manner died he?

*A.* Being weary of living longer, and having frequently endeavour'd to dispatch himself, he died at last of bleeding immoderately at the nose, after he had adopted *Ælius Antoninus*.

Q. How many Years did he possess the Empire?

*A.* Twenty years, and Eleven months, being Seventy three years old.

Q. Whom did he Marry?

*A.* *Sabina*, *Trajan's* Neice.

Q. How did he govern his Soldiers?

*A.* By living just as they did, and eating their Ammunition Bread, Bacon, and Cheese, after the Example of *Scipio*, *Æmilianus*, and *Metellus*.

Q. Did not he much apply himself to the Study of Magick?

*A.* Yes.

Q. Was he a man of Learning?

*A.* There was ne're a man in his Empire, who knew so many several things in so many several Professions. Besides, he had a prodigious Memory, and could repeat by heart the Names of all Places, Passes of Rivers, and his Soldiers.

*Q.* Did he take a pleasure to converse with Learned Men?

*A.* Yes, and would always pretend to the Glory of having got the better of them in all Disputes. One *Favorinus*, by Name, having own'd himself out-done by the Emperor, altho he could easily have repell'd the force of his Arguments, if he had been so minded, and his Friends blaming him for it, *Why*, says he, *would you not have me give place to the Man that has Thirty Legions at his Command?*

*Q.* What particularly recommended him to the People?

*A.* His Moderation and Clemency; for after his arrival to the Empire, he would by no means revenge the Injuries that had been done him before. And having once met a Person that had offended him, says he, *You have escaped, since I am made Emperor.*

*Q.* What Learned Men flourish'd in his time?

*A.* *Ptolomy* of *Alexandria*, the famous Astronomer. *Pblegon*, *Adrian's Libertus*, who deserves so well of History for his exact Calculation of the Olympiads. *Arrian* who writ

writ the Expedition of *Alexander* the Great. And *Aulus Gellius*, the Learned Author of the *Noctes Attice*. At the same time those Monstrous Hereticks, *Basilides*, *Carpocras*, *Marcion*, and the *Gnosticks*, began to shew their Heads, and disturb the Tranquillity of the Church.

### Antoninus Pius *the Sixteenth Emperor*.

*The Year of Rome 878. Of the Birth of J.C. 138.*

Q From whence came *Antoninus*?

A. He was a *Gaul* by Birth, and born at *Nismes*, a City of *Languedoc*. For his Clemency, and other Virtues, he had the Surname of *Pius* bestow'd upon him.

Q. What was his most usual Saying?

A. That he would rather chuse to preserve the Life of one *Roman-Citizen*, than to kill a thousand Enemies.

Q. Give me his Character.

A. He was the most just, and most moderate of all the *Roman* Emperors; and had left an unblemish'd Name behind him, if out of too warm a Zeal for his own gods, he had not suffer'd the Christians to be persecuted, in which Tempest *Telephorus* and *Hyginus*, Bishops of *Rome*, suffer'd Martyrdom.

Q. What Reputation had he Abroad?

A. Tho he never stirr'd out of *Italy*, and but seldom out of *Rome*, yet he effected

more by the Authority of his Virtues, than any of his Predecessors had done by their Arms. *Pharasmanes*, King of *Iberia*, having seen and convers'd with him, immediately made those Concessions which he had formerly refused. *Vologeses*, the *Parthian*, no sooner read his Letter, but he quitted his pretences to *Armenia*; nay, the *Indians* and *Hircanians* chose him to be an Arbitrator of their Differences.

*Q.* What Answer was it he gave his Wife *Faustina*, when she blam'd him upon the score of his being too liberal?

*A.* He laugh'd at her Avarice, *And don't you know*, says he to her, *that now we are in Possession of the Empire, we have nothing of our own, but that it belongs all to the People.*

*Q.* How did he serve Idle Persons.

*A.* He so far detested them, that he turn'd out of their places such as were unserviceable to the Publick, saying, Nothing was so scandalous, and indeed so cruel; as to suffer the Commonwealth to maintain those lazy Mouths that did nothing at all for it.

*Q.* Did he love to visit the Provinces of the Empire?

*A.* No: For, let a Prince, says he, take never so much care, yet his Retinue will be a Charge and Burthen to the People.

*Q.* Whom did he adopt for his Children?

*A. Lucius.*

*A. Lucius Verus, and Marcus Aurelius;* he gave his Daughter in Marriage to the latter, and declar'd him his Successor.

Q. Pray give me an instance of his Moderation and Goodness?

*A. Apollonius* refused to go to Court to teach *Marcus Aurelius*, pretending that a Master ought not to dance Attendance after his Scholar. Why, replies *Antoninus*, 'tis a wonderful thing that so great a Philosopher as you are, should find it a greater way from your Lodgings to the Court, than from *Chalcis* to *Rome*.

Q. How died he?

*A.* He died of an Indisposition at his Country-house, in the Seventy sixth year of his Age; after he had reign'd Twenty two years, and Six months.

Q. What Eminent Men flourish'd in his time?

*A. Galen* of *Pergamus*, the Celebrated Physician. *Maximus Tyrius*, a Platonick Philosopher. *Ælian*, who has left a small Tract of Natural History. *Justin*, the Abbreviator of *Trogus Pompeius*. And *Diogenes Laertius*, who writ the Lives of the Philosophers.

**Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus,  
making together the Seventeenth Em-  
peror.**

*The Year of Rome 901. Of the Birth of J. C. 161.*

**Q.** Who was this *Marcus Aurelius*?

**A.** Son-in-Law to *Antoninus*. He was call'd the Philosopher, because he applied himself very much to the Study of Philosophy, and by Sect was a *Stoick*.

**Q.** Who shared the Empire with him?

**A.** *Lucius Verus*, his Brother, who had married his Daughter *Lucilla*.

**Q.** Was not this the first time that two Emperors held the Empire together?

**A.** Yes.

**Q.** What was the reason of making this Innovation?

**A.** Because *Adrian* would not adopt *Antoninus*, but upon this Condition, that when he arrived to the Empire, he should adopt *Marcus Aurelius*, and that *Marcus Aurelius* should adopt *Lucius Verus*.

**Q.** What sort of a Character had *Verus* in the World?

**A.** He was too Effeminate, and too great a lover of his Pleasures.

**Q.** What do Historians observe concerning him?

*A. Marcus*

*A. Marcus Aurelius* having sent him to fight against the *Parthians*, he threw the whole burden of the War upon his Lieutenants, who obtain'd great Advantages over the Enemy.

Q. What did these two Emperors do afterwards?

*A. Having triumph'd over the Parthians*, they declared War against the *Marcomanni*.

Q. What happen'd to *Verus* in this Expedition?

*A. He died of an Apoplexy.*

Q. And what did *Marcus Aurelius* do upon his Death?

*A. He marched alone against these People*, whom by this time the *Goths*, the *Vandals*, the *Sarmatians*, the *Suevi*, and other Barbarous Nations had join'd.

Q. What Success had *Marcus Aurelius* in this War?

*A. After a Dispute of Three years continuance*, he entirely defeated and subdued them.

Q. What remarkable Accidents fell out in the Course of this War?

*A. The Marcomanni being thus overthrown*, the Emperor marching against the *Quadi*, was got into a Pound, and surrounded on every side by the Enemies. Nor was this all, for his Army was ready to perish for want of Water; but a Legion, wholly consisting of Christians, by their earnest Prayers, obtain'd so plentiful a Shower of Rain, that

that the whole Army was infinitely refresh'd by it.

Q. Was there nothing more observable in it than this?

A. This Rain was accompanied with prodigious Thunder and Lightning, which only fell upon the *Barbarians*, and cast them into so great a Confusion, that the *Romans* immediately charging them, cut them all in pieces.

Q. How was this Legion named?

A. *Fulminatrix Legio*, or the Thundring Legion.

Q. What Concessions did the Emperor make to them in favour of this Miracle?

A. He stopt the Persecution against the Christians, whom till this time, at the Instigation of the Philosophers, by whom he was solely managed, he had most cruelly treated. In this Persecution, *Pius*, *Aricetus*, and *Soter*, Bishops of *Rome*; *Justin Martyr*, the Learned Apologist, and *Polycarp*, Bishop of *Smyrna*, receiv'd the Crown of Martyrdom.

Q. What Men of Note lived in his time?

A. *Hermogenes* the Rhetorician, *Herodes Atticus*, and *Athenaeus* whose Learned Writings are so highly valued by the Criticks. *Philostratus*, a Sophister, who writ that impudent Legend of *Apollonius's* Life. *Apuleius*, an *African*, who sufficiently discovers his



his Country by the harshness of his Style. And *Lucian*, who from a Christian turning Atheist, employ'd his Satyrical Talent so liberally upon the Christian and Heathen Priesthood and Deities.

Q. What was his Wife's Name?

A. *Faustina*, who was one of the most barefaced lascivious Women that ever lived.

Q. Did he not get himself Divorced from her?

A. He could never be induced to use her so; saying, That he could not cast her off with Justice, unless he return'd her back her Dowry, which was the Empire.

Q. Where died he?

A. In *Pannonia* (now *Hungary*) in the Sixty first year of his Age.

Q. How long did he Reign?

A. Nineteen years, and Ten days.

Q. To whom did he recommend his Son?

A. To the gods and the *Roman* people, if he were worthy of it.

### *Commodus the Eighteenth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 920. Of the Birth of J. C. 180.*

Q. WHO was *Commodus*?

A. The Son of *M. Aurelius*, and the Lustful *Faustina*. But some say that he was begotten by a Gladiator.

Q. What

Q. What sort of a Prince did he make?

A. He was the Handsomest, but the Lewdest and most Vicious man of his Age. As for the Administration of State-Affairs, he wholly intrusted them with *Perennis*, a Person of great Ambition and Cruelty, whom he had constituted his *Præfectus Prætorij*, or Captain of his Guards.

Q. What do Historians particularly relate concerning him?

A. That he was so admirable an Archer, that one day having order'd a Hundred Lyons to be let loose one after another, he kill'd them all. At another time he did the same by a Hundred Oltriches, and cut off their Heads with his Arrows, which were headed in the fashion of an Half-moon.

Q. How did he behave himself towards his Sister *Lucilla*?

A. He caus'd her to be put to death for having conspired to advance her own Husband to the Imperial Dignity, who was only a bare Senator of *Rome*. She was first married to the Emperor *Verus*.

Q. Wherein did he show his Ambition?

A. In commanding himself to be call'd *Hercules* the Son of *Jupiter*: Nor was his Cruelty less predominant than his Ambition; for he sacrific'd all those to his barbarous Resentments, of whom he had the least suspicion.

Q. After what manner died he at last?

A. He

*A.* He was poison'd by his Concubine *Marcia*, because she came to understand that he had resolv'd to dispatch her out of the way.

Q. How happen'd she to receive that Information?

*A.* By the means of a Child who found the Emperor's Table-Book, wherein she found her own Death design'd.

Q. What prompted him to serve her so?

*A.* *Commodus* ( who spent his time at Court among Strumpets and Catamites, and abroad with Fencing-Masters and Bullies ) had it seems resolv'd to lye in the Gladiators Amphitheatre, in order to go out with them the next morning, and harangue the people in that blessed Company: Now she had taken the freedom to remonstrate to him how mightily this would sink his Reputation, and how contemptible it would render him to the whole world.

Q. How long did this true transcript of *Nero* and *Caligula* hold the Empire?

*A.* Twelve Years, Nine Months, and Fourteen Days, and died in the One and thirtieth Year of his Age.

### *Pertinax the Nineteenth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.*

Q. HOW was *Pertinax* descended?

*A.* He came of very mean Parents; he was a *Ligurian* ( a *Genoese* ) by Nation,

Nation, first a *Grammarian*, and afterwards turn'd Soldier.

Q. Did not he refuse the Empire?

A. Yes, but they compell'd him to accept of it. He endeavour'd to avoid it by recommending *Glabrio* a Senator to their Choice, who, as he said, was a man of far greater Merit than himself.

Q. Pray acquaint me with his Character?

A. He was an exceeding Valiant, Discreet, Modest, and Sweet-temper'd Prince: He would not suffer his Wife to be call'd *Augusta* or Empress, nor his Son to be saluted by the Title of *Cesar*.

Q. What happen'd to him?

A. He was assassinated by his Soldiers Three Months after he had been proclaim'd Emperor.

Q. For what reason?

A. Because he show'd himself too severe towards them, and design'd to keep them under Military Discipline; so they cut off his Head, and carried it to the Camp, where they fortified themselves. Seeing no body stir, they order'd one of the Soldiers to make Proclamation, That the Empire was to be sold, and that he who bid the most should be put into the Possession of it by the Army.

Q. The Empire being thus offer'd to sale, what Chapmen came in to buy so great a Purchase?

A. Only Two Senators, *Sulpician* the Governor of *Rome*, and *Julian*; but the latter carried

carried it, because he offer'd the greater Sum.

## Julian the Twentieth Emperor.

*The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.*

Q. **W**H O was *Julian*?

A. Grandson to the famous Lawyer of that name, who composed the perpetual Edict in *Adrian's* time. Being proclaim'd Emperor, and conducted to the Senate-House by his Guards, he made a very fine Speech to the Senators to this effect; *You want an Emperor, and I am the fittest person you can chuse.*

Q. Did not the People mutiny against him?

A. Yes, and refused to acknowledge him, saying he had stole the Empire.

Q. What befel him at last?

A. *Severus*, who was at that time Governor of *Pannonia*, being desired by the Romans to take the Management of the Empire upon himself, revolted against him.

Q. What Measures did *Julian* take to avoid this Storm that threatned him so?

A. He offer'd to take him as Partner with him in the Empire.

Q. And did *Severus* accept the Condition?

A. He return'd him no Answer, but still advanced towards *Rome*; which News so dispirited *Julian*, that he sent him word he  
was

was ready to resign the Empire, provided he would give him his Life and Liberty. At last he was murder'd by his own Soldiers, in the Fifty sixth Year of his Age; after he had reign'd Two Months and Five Days.

*Severus the Twenty first Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.*

Q. From whence came *Severus*?

A. He was originally an *African*, and seized on the Empire under a pretence of revenging the Death of *Pertinax*, which he did by degrading the *Prætorian* Soldiers that had kill'd him.

Q. Had he no Competitors in the Empire?

A. At first *Albinus* set up in *Britain*, and *Niger* in *Syria*; but he having with great Celerity made himself Master of *Rome*, beat *Albinus* by Stratagem, and *Niger* by open Force.

Q. How did he effect it?

A. Not thinking it advisable to have two Enemies upon his hands at once, he takes off *Albinus* by proclaiming him *Cæsar*, then pursues *Niger*, and after several sharp Encounters takes and puts him to death. Having thus rid himself of *Niger*, he immediately marches towards *Albinus*, whom he defeats and kills at *Lyons*.

Q. Whom

Q. Whom did he take Partners with him in the Empire ?

A. *Caracalla* and *Geta*, his Two Sons.

Q. How did he behave himself towards the Christians ?

A. A Christian Soldier refusing to wear a Crown at a Donative, unhappily prov'd the occasion of a sad Persecution, in which *Irenæus* Bishop of *Lyons*, laid down his Life for the Truth. His great Favourite *Plautianus* incited him to this Cruelty, laying hold of this occasion to seize the Fortunes and Estates of several Persons of Quality that were Christians.

Q. What became of him at last ?

A. After he had vanquish'd a world of people, he pass'd over into *Britain*, whither being arrived, and not able to follow his Captains by reason of the Gout which indisposed him, he received advice that his Son *Bassianus* was declared *Cæsar* by the Army.

Q. And did not this News extremely mortify him ?

A. He got himself immediately to be carried in a Litter, and commanded the New Emperor to be brought before him, with the Tribunes and Centurions, who were so strangely affrighted at the Majesty which appear'd in his Looks, that they implor'd his Pardon upon their Knees.

Q. How did he receive them ?

A. *I would have you know*, said he to them,  
that

that it is the Head which governs, and not the Feet. After this he fell dangerously sick; but *Caracalla* fearing that he would not dye, tried to corrupt his Father's Physicians to poison him.

Q. And did they comply with his desires?

A. No; for which he remembred them when he came to be Emperor, for he caus'd them all to dye.

Q. Where did *Severus* end his days?

A. At *York*, being Sixty six years old, after he had reign'd 17 Years, 8 Months, and 3 Days. Here perceiving his last hour approach, he cried out, *I have been all that a Min can be, but it serves me in no stead now.* Then he order'd his Urn to be brought to him, wherein his Ashes were to be inclos'd; and taking it between his hands, *Little Urn*, says he, *thou shalt contain that which the whole World was not able to contain.*

Q. What was his True Character?

A. He was Cruel, and had no regard to his Word.

Q. To ballance this, had he no other good Qualities?

A. He took delight to administer Justice; he was well skill'd in the Laws, and preserved a particular Esteem for *Papinian*, the most eminent Lawyer of that time.

Q. What did the Senate say of him?

A. What had been formerly said of *Augustus*, they now said of him, That it had been very advantagious for the Republic, if he



he had never been born, or had never died ; because, as on the one side he was serviceable to the Commonwealth, so on the other he was somewhat too cruel.

Q. What may be farther said of him ?

A. The same that was said of *M. Aurelius*, viz. That he had been happy if he had had no Children. He was exceedingly regretted after his Death.

Q. What Learned men flourish'd under his Reign ?

A. *Clemens Alexandrinus* a man of Universal Learning, who writ the *Stromata*; *Tertullian* an Ecclesiastic Author likewise, in Humor, Wit, and Style, an *African*; *Mirumius Felix*, who writ an Elegant Defence of the Christian Religion, worthy of *Augustus's* Age: With several more of a lower rank.

*Caracalla and Geta, making together the Twenty second Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 951. Of the Birth of J. C. 211.*

Q. TO whom fell the Empire after the Death of *Severus*, who died in *Britain* ?

A. To his Two Sons, whom he carried along with him in that Expedition.

Q. For what reason did he carry them with him ?

A. To remove them from *Rome*, where they lived in all manner of Excess.

Q. What

Q. What was *Geta's* Character ?

A. He was of a sweet easy Disposition, as his Brother *Caracalla* was naturally brutish and outrageous.

Q. What barbarous Action did that Monster commit in the Second Year of his Reign ?

A. He kill'd his Brother *Geta* with his own hand, in the presence of his Mother *Julia*.

Q. What other Instances can you give me of his Cruelty ?

A. He not only put above Two thousand persons to Death for adhering to his Brother's Party, but he banished several more, and cut off *Papinian's* Head.

Q. For what reason ?

A. Because he refused to flatter his Crime; for having desired him to write an Apology to excuse his Brother's Death, this eminent Lawyer told him, That it was much easier to Commit a Parricide, than to justify it.

Q. What is it that Historians report of his Mother *Julia* ?

A. That she had the Impudence to marry him, after *Geta's* Death.

Q. What Person did *Caracalla* imagine himself to be ?

A. He fancied he was *Alexander* the Great, because his Head lean'd a little upon one Shoulder, as that Prince's did.

Q. What is particularly observable concerning his Reign ?

A. That

*A.* That the Empire was never so harass'd with Imposts and Taxes, as it was under this Monster of Prodigality.

*Q.* What was the reason why he oppress'd his Subjects so severely ?

*A.* He would frequently maintain, That Money ought not to be lodged in private hands, but that all should go to his Exchequer to be distributed among the Soldiers.

*Q.* What became of him at last ?

*A.* While he was making War against the *Parthians*, he writ to *Materninus*, Governor of *Rome*, to consult the Astrologers, to know what fortune *Macrinus* the *Præfectus Prætorij* would come to.

*Q.* To whom was the Governor's Answer carried ?

*A.* It was deliver'd to *Caracalla* himself, while he was busied in managing a very fine Horse in the presence of *Macrinus*.

*Q.* And did he read it ?

*A.* No ; he gave it to *Macrinus* to read, who spoke not one word of it to the Emperor, but wholly employ'd himself to find out a person that would kill him.

*Q.* Did he find one ready to execute his design ?

*A.* He met one *Martial* after a little search, whose Brother *Caracalla* had put to death, who receiv'd this Commission with great eagerness, and run him through the body while he was easing Nature.

*Q.* How long did he reign ?

K

*A.* Six

*A.* Six Years, Two Months, and Five Days.

*Q.* Was he beloved by the People?

*A.* No; he was hated by all the world, except the Soldiers only, who regretted his Loss by reason of the excessive Largesses he frequently bestow'd upon them.

*Macrinus and his Son, making together the Twenty third Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 957. Of the Birth of J. C. 217.*

*Q.* **F**rom whence came *Macrinus*?

*A.* He was a *Moor* by Birth, and of a very mean condition at first.

*Q.* What station was he in when they proclaim'd him Emperor.

*A.* He was the *Praefectus Praetorij*.

*Q.* Whom did he associate with himself in the Empire?

*A.* His Son *Diadumenus*.

*Q.* What remarkable things do we read of *Macrinus*.

*A.* He made a Peace with the *Parthians*; and in his return to *Rome* divided his Army into two Bodies, that they might march home two several ways, but this division occasion'd his ruin.

*Q.* Pray tell me how?

*A.* *Mesa*, Sister to the Empress *Julia*, recommended to the Soldiers (who you must know had no great affection for *Macrinus*) a young

a young Gentleman about Nineteen Years old, the Son of her daughter *Semiamira*, who as they commonly pretended was *Caracalla's* Bastard, and they call'd him *Heliogabalus*.

Q. How did the Soldiers relish this Proposition?

A. They immediately proclaim'd him Emperor, because they loved him for his Father's sake; and he for his part marches directly towards *Macrinus*, and defeats him.

Q. What became of *Macrinus*?

A. He was kill'd as he endeavour'd to save himself in the City of *Antioch*; and shortly after his Son *Diadumenus* was slain by the order of the Emperor *Heliogabalus*.

Q. How long did he and his Son reign?

A. One Year and Two Months.

### *Heliogabalus the Twenty fourth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 959. Of the Birth of J. C. 219.*

Q. **W**Hose Son was *Heliogabalus*?

A. The Son of *Caracalla*.

Q. What signifies this word *Heliogabalus*?

A. A Priest of the Sun.

Q. What remarkable thing is related of him?

A. He intended to destroy the Religion of the *Romans*, and commanded that only the Sun should be adored.

Q. What sort of a Prince was he?

A. A Prodigy of a man, wholly abandon'd to all Lewdness and Debauchery.

Q. To whom was he married in the quality of a Wife?

A. To *Hierocles*, his Slave.

Q. What orders did he give this Slave?

A. To beat him well-favour'dly when he found him guilty of any Excess.

Q. And did the Slave take him at his word?

A. Yes; and sometimes belabour'd his Imperial Sides so heartily, that he made him black and blew all over, which the other bore very dutifully, comforting himself, That a Wife was oblig'd in Conscience to suffer every thing from her Husband.

Q. What did he do after this?

A. He establishes a Senate of Women, and makes his Mother the President of them.

Q. What did this wise Assembly debate about?

A. The Habits and Ornaments of Women, together with their Amours and Intrigues.

Q. Whom did he adopt for his Successor.

A. *Bassianus*, his Cousin-German, whom he call'd *Alexander*.

Q. What kind of a Man was *Alexander*?

A. He had so many valuable Qualities to recommend him, that he soon gain'd the Affection of all the *Romans*.

Q. Did

*Q.* Did not *Heliogabalus* become jealous of him ?

*A.* Yes, and design'd to put him to death.

*Q.* What happen'd upon this ?

*A.* His Guards being acquainted with his wicked intention, assassinated *Heliogabalus*, and threw his Body into the *Tiber*.

*Q.* How old was he then ?

*A.* He was Twenty two years old, and had reign'd Three Years, Nine Months, and Four Days.

*Q.* What Eminent men flourish'd at this time ?

*A.* *Origen* of *Alexandria*, who so learnedly defended the Christian Religion against the Attacks of *Celsus*.

### *Alexander the Twenty fifth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 962. Of the Birth of J.C. 222.*

*Q.* **W**Hat Account do Historians give of this *Alexander* ?

*A.* He was one of the greatest Princes that ever liv'd, and his Conduct was equally conspicuous in Peace and War.

*Q.* What did he look after in the beginning of his Reign ?

*A.* His first care was to administer Justice to all the world ; next he turned the Flatterers and Buffoons out of the Court.

*Q.* What other Regulations did he make ?

*A.* He prohibited the Sale of any Offices,

as being satisfied that none made a scruple to sell what they had bought.

*Q.* What did he allow them in lieu of this?

*A.* He settled honourable Salaries upon all those whom he constituted Governors of Provinces, lest they should squeeze and oppress the people.

*Q.* What is reported of his Piety?

*A.* That he secretly honour'd Jesus Christ in his Closet.

*Q.* What other remarkable Passages occur in his History?

*A.* In *Heliogabalus's* time there was a set of Cheats, commonly call'd *Sellers of Smoke*, because they took Money of people to sollicite their business, and help them to Preferment, but never did any thing for them.

*Q.* Were there any of this Gang under the Emperor *Alexander*?

*A.* One of this hopeful Fraternity had it seems taken a Hundred Crowns of a Soldier, and promis'd to obtain of the Emperor a certain Office which he was desirous of.

*Q.* And when *Alexander* knew of it how did he serve him?

*A.* He fastens him to a Post, where he was choak'd by the smoke of a heap of wood which was set on fire about him. Over the Post this Inscription was to be seen, *Fumo periit qui fumum vendidit*. He that sold Smoke is stifled by Smoke.

*Q.* Did



Q. Did any considerable Revolution happen in *Alexander's* Reign?

A. *Artaxerxes* King of the *Persians*, after he had defeated the *Parthians* in several Battles, and kill'd their King *Artabanus*, who was the last of the Family of the *Arfacide*, which had flourished Four hundred years, re-establishes the Empire of the *Persians*. This exceedingly alarm'd *Alexander Severus*, by reason of the frequent Inroads the *Persians* made into the *Roman* Territories.

Q. What great Exploits did *Alexander* perform after this?

A. Having reviv'd the old Military Discipline, he defeated the *Persians* in the East, and overcame the *Africans* in *Mauritania*. At last, wholly turning his thoughts upon the *German* War, he with his Mother *Mammaea* was slain by his Soldiers at *Mentz*, in the 39th. year of his Age, having reign'd Thirteen Years, and Nineteen days. 'Twas his Mother's Penuriousness that ruin'd him with the Army.

Q. What Eminent men flourish'd in his Reign?

A. *Dion Cassius*, twice honour'd with the Consular Dignity, who writ the *Roman* History very accurately in *Greek*: The greatest part of this Excellent Work is now lost; which is chiefly attributed to his Abbreviator *Xiphilinus*, a *Constantinopolitan* Monk. Thus the loss of *Trogus Pompeius* is imputed to *Justin*, as that of *Livy* to *Lucius Florus*.

*Maximin and his Son, making together  
the Twenty sixth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 975. Of the Birth of J. C. 235.*

Q. **W**Hose Son was this *Maximin* ?

A. A Shepherd's, in a small Village of *Thrace*.

Q. What Stature was he of ?

A. An extraordinary one, being Eight Foot high ; and besides he was so strong, that he could draw a Chariot as heavy laden as two Horses could draw.

Q. How got he himself advanced to the Empire ?

A. By a Faction of the Soldiers. He was the first Emperor that without any Decree of the Senate obtain'd the Purple by the sole Authority of the Army.

Q. What method did he take to preserve himself in this Dignity ?

A. After he had successfully ended the Wars of *Germany*, he exercised great Cruelties in *Rome* ; Some he fastned to Crosses, where they miserably perish'd ; others he baited in the Skins of Beasts, and expos'd them to Tigers and Lions ; others were kill'd with Bastinadoes ; in short, there was no sort of Barbarity to be named, which he did not use.

Q. Did not these Brutalities draw the aversion of all the world upon him ?

A. The

*A.* The Senate declar'd him an Enemy to the Republic.

*Q.* Who first made Head against him?

*A.* *Gordianus* the Governor of *Afric*, a man Eighty years old, was, together with his Son, against his will elevated to the Empire; but Fortune crossing his Attempts, and his Son being slain by the *Moors*, the old Gentleman out of despair hang'd himself.

*Q.* When the Senate heard of the death of these two great men, whom did they elect for their Emperor?

*A.* *Balbinus* and *Papienus*, two of their own Body.

*Q.* Was not *Maximin* highly incens'd at the Proceedings of the Senate?

*A.* He immediately quitted the *Sarmatian* War, and marching into *Italy* at the Head of his Army he belieged *Aquilaia*, which was the first City he met in his way, and was at that time the finest and most flourishing Town in all *Italy*.

*Q.* Who signaliz'd themselves in this Siege?

*A.* The Women; for the Soldiers wanting Cordage to string their Bows, and serve the Machines that were employ'd in throwing of stones, they cut off their own Hair, and made Cords of it.

*Q.* What became of *Maximin*?

*A.* His Soldiers slew him and his Son in his Tent, because he had occasion'd the death of so many of them.

Q. How long did he and his Son reign?

A. Two Years and some Months.

*Balbinus and Pupienus, making together  
the Twenty seventh Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 978. Of the Birth of J. C. 238.*

Q. BY whom were *Balbinus* and *Pupienus*  
own'd to be Emperors?

A. By the Senate?

Q. Upon what condition?

A. That they should adopt young *Gordianus* for their Successor in the Empire, the Grandson of him that hang'd himself in *Afric*.

Q. How long did they reign together?

A. Nine or ten months.

Q. What happen'd at last?

A. *Balbinus* and *Pupienus* became jealous of young *Gordianus*, seeing him so mightily beloved by every one, and therefore had agreed for their own security to dispatch him; but the Soldiers prevented their Design, and kill'd them.

*Gordianus the Younger, the Twenty eighth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 978. Of the Birth of J. C. 238.*

Q. **W**Hose Son was this *Gordianus*?

A. Grandson, as we observ'd before, to *Gordianus* the Governor of *Afric*.

Q. How old was he when he arrived to the Empire?

A. He was 17 Years old.

Q. In whom did he repose the greatest confidence?

A. In his Father-in Law *Misibens*, who was the *Præfectus Prætorij*, and was so well satisfied of his Conduct and Valour, that tho he himself was present in the Army, yet he would have it wholly commanded by him.

Q. What actions did he perform?

A. By the advice of *Misibens* he opens the Temple of *Janus*, and marches directly against the *Persians* who then threatned *Italy*.

Q. What Conquests did he make?

A. He retook *Carra*, *Nisibis*, and some other Cities.

Q. What other remarkable things happen'd under his Reign?

A. In the Sixteenth Year of it *Philip* an *Arabian*, by the assistance of his Physicians, poison'd *Misibens*.

Q. What

Q. What did this *Philip* do afterwards?

A. He got himself declared Emperor in the presence of *Gordianus*, who fearing further mischief from this perfidious Villain, desired him at least to give him the place of *Præfectus Prætorij*.

Q. And did he give it him?

A. No, he refus'd him; but fearing the Soldiers would restore this young Prince to his Throne again, he caus'd him to be murder'd.

Q. Was the Army concern'd for his Death?

A. It so far affected them, that they erected a Tomb to him with this following Inscription: *To the Divine Gordianus, Conqueror of the Persians, the Goths, the Sarmatians, and the Germans, but not of the Philips.*

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Three Years and six days.

Q. Did nothing remarkable happen about this time?

A. The *Goths*, whose name before was unknown to the *Romans*, now daily began to pour forth vast swarms of men upon the Outskirts of the Empire, which at last terminated in the Ruin of it. These barbarous people carried every thing like a vast Inundation before them, and erected Kingdoms not only in all the Southern Provinces of *Europe*, but extended their Conquests as far as *Afric*. They first introduced the Feudal Law into this part of the World, and settled fixt  
Reve-

Revenues in Land, and Temporal Jurisdictions upon the Church, which before consisted of nothing but Voluntary Oblations.

*Philip and his Son, making together the Twenty ninth Emperor.*

Q FROM whence came this Philip ?

A. He was an *Arabian* by birth.

Q. What Measures did he take to secure himself of the Empire ?

A. As he thought it advisable to conceal his Crime from the Senate, he sent them word that *Gordianus* died a Natural Death ; so that it was no difficult matter for him to obtain of them to confirm the Choice which the Army had made of him.

Q. Did he take any Partner in the Empire ?

A. Yes, his Son.

Q. How long did they reign ?

A. Five Years and some Months ; after which they were both assassinated almost at the same time ; the Father in a Sedition which happen'd at *Verona*, and the Son at *Rome*.

Q. What men of Note flourish'd now ?

A. *Plotinus* a celebrated *Platonist*, and a Disciple of *Origen*, who taught with great Applause at *Rome*; and *St. Cyprian* a most Eloquent Father, and Ornament of the *African Church*.

Decius

*Decius the Thirtieth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 989. Of the Birth of J. C. 243.*

**Q.** IN what station was *Decius* before he got Possession of the Empire?

*A.* He was nothing more than a Senator.

**Q.** How did he arrive to the Supreme Dignity?

*A.* Being sent by *Philip* to appease a Sedition which had arose in *Pannonia*, he was there chosen Emperor by the very Authors of that Commotion, who discover'd all sorts of good qualities in him; and indeed he had only one fault, which was his excessive Cruelty to the Christians.

**Q.** What did he enjoin them to do?

*A.* They were constrain'd by all manner of Tortures and Punishments to offer Sacrifice to Idols.

**Q.** Was he engaged in any War?

*A.* He fought against the *Goths*, but was miserably overthrown by them, his Son slain in his fight, and himself lost in a Marsh, whither he fled by the Advice of *Gaius* to save himself.

**Q.** How long did he reign?

*A.* Near Three Years.

**Q.** What remarkable thing fell out in his time?

*A.* 'Tis said he was the author of the Seventh Persecution, to avoid which storm several



several Christians fled into Woods and Caves; and particularly *Paulus of Egypt*, the Patriarch of the Hermits, being taken with the Charms of a Solitary Life, here laid down the first Scheme of Monckery. Among others, Pope *Fabian* lost his Life; and *Origen* was taken into Custody and imprison'd, but to avoid Death he was prevail'd upon to offer Incense to Idols.

Q. What other Passages happen'd ?

A. At the same time *Novatus* and *Novatianus* made a Schism in the Church, and the abovemention'd St. *Cyprian* Bishop of *Carthage* flourish'd; who in the Year of our Lord 256, under the Pontificat of St. *Stephen*, having assembled a Council at *Carthage*, declar'd the Baptism of Hereticks to be null and void, and that such Persons ought to be rebaptiz'd: However, he effac'd this Error by his Martyrdom, which happen'd in the time of *Valerianus*.

*Gallus and Volusianus his Son, making together the Thirty first Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 991. Of the Birth of J. C. 251.*

Q. **W**H O was this *Gallus* ?

A. He was Lieutenant of *Decius's* Army.

Q. How came he to be proclaim'd Emperor ?

A. By

A. By the Soldiers after the death of *Decius*.

Q. What means did he use to secure himself in the Empire?

A. He procur'd his Election to be ratified by the Senate.

Q. When he was at *Rome*, what did he do?

A. He associated his Son *Volusianus* with him in the Empire.

Q. What did he do besides this?

A. He likewise adopted the Son of *Decius*.

Q. Why did he take this young *Decius* a Partner with him?

A. To quiet the minds of the *Romans*, but shortly after he caused him to be poisoned.

Q. What became of *Gallus* at last?

A. He and his Son were murder'd by their own Army for their Cowardice.

Q. How long did they reign?

A. Two Years and Four Months.

### *Æmilianus the Thirty second Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 994. Of the Birth of J. C. 254.*

Q. FROM whence came *Æmilianus*?

A. He was a *Moor* by Birth.

Q. What Office did he bear when he was made Emperor?

A. He was Governor of *Pannonia*.

Q. By

Q. By whom was he proclaimed Emperor ?

A. By the Soldiers, because he had beaten back the *Scythians* who had made an Inroad into that Country.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. No longer than Three Months.

Q. What happen'd to him then ?

A. He was kill'd by the very same Soldiers who Three Months before had proclaim'd him Emperor.

Q. What made them serve him so ?

A. Because they despised him by reason of his mean Parentage.

Q. Whom did they elect in his place ?

A. *Valerianus*, Governor of *Germany* and *Gaul*, an experienc'd Captain, and a man of Quality.

*Valerianus the Thirty third Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 994. Of the Birth of J. C. 254.*

Q. **W**Hat sort of a man was *Valerianus* ?

A. He possess'd all the good qualities that make an Excellent Prince.

Q. Was he a Successful General ?

A. No ; for he lost every Battel he fought.

Q. Whom did he associate with him in the Empire ?

A. His Son.

Q. How did he treat the Christians ?

A. At

*A.* At the Instigation of a certain Magician, and of *Macrinus* the Præfect, he rais'd a terrible Persecution against them, in which *St. Lawrence* was burnt upon a Gridiron.

*Q.* What memorable things happen'd in his time ?

*A.* The *Barbarians* committed great Ravages upon all the Provinces of the Empire.

*Q.* Did not *Valerianus* use his best endeavours to stop their Proceedings ?

*A.* He did ; and after he had attack'd the *Scythians*, ( who had taken *Chalcedon*, burnt *Nice*, and the famous Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus* ) he turn'd his Forces against *Sapores* King of the *Persians*, but was taken Prisoner in that War.

*Q.* How did they use him when they had him in their power ?

*A.* He was treated by that cruel King with all the Indignity imaginable, for he made a Footstool of him to mount his Horse, and at last order'd him to be flea'd and salted.

*Q.* When his Son *Gallienus* heard of his Father's Captivity, did not he employ his utmost Power to deliver him from it.

*A.* No ; and when a Messenger came to acquaint him with his Death, he replied rather with the Stupidity of a *Barbarian*, than the Sedateness of a *Philosopher*, That he knew very well his Father was born mortal, and subject to all the accidents of Fortune.

*Q.* What

*Q.* What extravagant actions did he ever commit ?

*A.* He was vain enough to make a sort of a Triumph, wherein was to be seen a man clad in Royal Vestments, resembling *Sapores*, loaded with Chains, and follow'd by several others that represented the *Persian* Captives, as if he had really vanquished the King of *Persia*.

*Q.* Did none of the Spectators laugh at this ridiculous Show ?

*A.* Some Senators made very merry upon this occasion, and drawing near the sight, they asked aloud, Where was their Emperor *Valerianus* ?

*Q.* When *Gallienus* heard of it, how did he resent it ?

*A.* He commanded all those that took this liberty, to be burnt.

*Q.* How long did *Valerianus* reign ?

*A.* Six or seven years.

### *Gallienus the Thirty fourth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 999. Of the Birth of J. C. 259.*

*Q.* **W** hose Son was *Gallienus* ?

*A.* The Son of *Valerianus*.

*Q.* What remarkable Accidents happen'd in the world when he succeeded his Father ?

*A.* All the Provinces belonging to the *Romans* design'd to throw off their Yoke, and the respective Governors of them caus'd them.

themselves to be proclaim'd Emperors ; so that besides *Gallienus*, the Roman Empire might reckon Thirty *Cæsars* or Tyrants.

Q. Who was it that stopt the progress of the Enemies of the Empire ?

A. *Odenatus* King of *Palmyra*, a Generous Heroic Prince, not only retook *Nisibis* and *Carrae*, and wrested *Mesopotamia* out of the hands of the *Persians*, but he put their Monarch to flight, kill'd him abundance of his Soldiers, and sent several of his *Satrapæ*, or Peers, in Chains to *Gallienus*.

Q. What did *Gallienus* do with these Prisoners ?

A. This scandalous Prince was not ashamed to Triumph over them, tho he had no share in the Action.

Q. What Recompence did *Gallienus* make to *Odenatus* ?

A. Some years after, in consideration of the Victories he had gain'd, and the great Services he had done, he made him his Partner in the Empire ; but one of his own Relations becoming jealous of him, murder'd him and his Son *Herod*.

Q. After *Odenatus* was dead, who took the Government in hand ?

A. His Wife *Zenobia*, a Woman of an undaunted Spirit, and of a Chastity equal to her Courage, who perform'd those Miracles against the *Persians*, the *Arabians*, the *Scythians*, and the *Armenians*, that she will be always reckon'd among the greatest Heroines of her Sex.

Q. What

Q. What memorable Action happen'd about this time ?

A. The *Franks*, a Warlike and Powerful People, now began to make a Figure in the world, and breaking out of *Germany* into *Gaul*, in process of time made themselves Masters of all that large Countrey, from the *Ocean* and the *Rhine*, to the *Alpes* and *Pyrenees*.

Q. What did the Principal Officers of the *Roman Army* do ?

A. Finding that *Gallienus* was not capable to defend the Empire, they resolv'd to elect *Claudius*, a Man of Quality and Merit.

Q. What became of *Gallienus* at last ?

A. He was assassinated near *Milan*, with his Brother *Valerius*, as he went to give Battle to the Tyrant *Aureolus*.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. Almost Eight Years.

*Claudius II. the Thirty fifth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1008. Of the Birth of J. C. 268.*

Q. What sort of a man was this *Claudius* the second ?

A. One of the greatest as well as the most accomplish'd Princes of his time ?

Q. How did he employ himself as soon as he was advanc'd to the Throne ?

A. The first thing he did was to defeat *Aureolus*, who in *Gallienus's* time had got him-

himself to be proclaim'd Emperor at Milan.

Q. What measures did *Aureolus* take ?

A. He offer'd to own him as the Rightful Emperor, provided he would leave him what he possess'd in *Italy*.

Q. What Answer did *Claudius* return ?

A. That he had done well to have made such a Proposition to *Gallienus*, but as for himself he was resolv'd to make him know his duty, and surrender upon discretion.

Q. What remarkable Action did *Claudius* afterwards perform ?

A. Having defeated *Aureolus*, he marched against an Army of *Goths*, consisting of Three hundred thousand men, that ravag'd and destroy'd *Asia Minor*.

Q. Which side obtain'd the Victory ?

A. *Claudius* gave the *Goths* a great Overthrow, and sunk Two thousand of their Ships.

Q. What Sirname was bestow'd upon him for this gallant Exploit ?

A. That of *Gothicus*.

Q. What died he of ?

A. Of the Plague, after he had reign'd about Two Years.



## Quintillus the Thirty sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1010. Of the Birth of J. C. 270.

Q. **W**Hose Son was *Quintillus* ?

A. The Son of *Claudius*.

Q. How was he proclaim'd Emperor ?

A. By the Soldiers, after the Death of his Father.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. No more than Fifteen Days.

Q. What Misfortune befel him then ?

A. He was kill'd in a Mutiny by the very same Soldiers that had made him Emperor.

Q. What Learned men flourish'd at this time ?

A. *Longinus*, a great Favourite of *Zenobia*, and a most excellent Orator and Critic, who in his Treatise *de Sublimi* makes honourable mention of *Moses* ; and *Porphyry*, a Jew by Nation, first a Christian and afterwards an Apostate, but a most Acute Philosopher.

## Aurelianus the Thirty seventh Emperor.

Q. **F**ROM whence came *Aurelianus* ?

A. He was of a very mean Birth, and came from *Pannonia*.

Q. What sort of a man was he ?

A. He was extremely Generous, but with-  
al

al Cruel and Bloody, which occasion'd the famous Saying, *That he was a good Physician, but took away too much blood.*

Q. What did he do as soon as he was elected Emperor ?

A. He wore a Diadem, which none of his Predecessors had ever done before him.

Q. Did he make any Warlike Expeditions ?

A. He vanquish'd the *Germans* and *Marcomanni* in *Vindeliciz*, which comprehended the same Tract of Ground as *Bavaria* does now. Then marching towards the *East*, he takes *Zenobia* Prisoner, recovers *Egypt*, and all *Asia*, and in short, enlarges the Empire to its Ancient Bounds.

Q. When the Wars were over, how did he employ himself ?

A. He triumph'd at *Rome*, and his Illustrious Captive *Zenobia* made no small part of the Spectacle ; but he was enrag'd at some Seditions which had arose there in his absence, the Authors of which he severely punish'd ; nay, even some Senators, for faults which a milder Prince would have pass'd by.

Q. How did the *Romans* relish this Severity ?

A. They began to fear him, and say that he deserv'd to be assassinated.

Q. Where, and after what manner died he ?

A. In *Thrace*, where he lay with a powerful Army to attack the *Persians* ; and as he was upon the March between *Byzantium* and  
*Heracles*,

*Heraclea*, he was slain by *Mucaporus* at the instigation of *Mnestheus*, his Freed-man and Secretary.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Five Years compleatly.

Q. Was his Death unreveng'd?

A. No; for the Villany of *Mnestheus* being immediately discover'd, he was condemn'd to be thrown to Wild Beasts, and the whole Army celebrated the Funeral of *Aurelianus* after a most Magnificent manner.

### Tacitus the Thirty eighth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1015. Of the Birth of J.C. 275.

Q. After the Emperor *Aurelianus* was thus slain in *Thrace*, whom did they chuse to succeed him?

A. The Soldiers writ to the Senate to desire them to elect an Emperor.

Q. And what Answer did the Senate return?

A. They excused themselves, saying, they would leave it to the Army.

Q. What happen'd upon this?

A. An *Inter-regnum* of Eight Months; the Senate and Army complementing one another about the Honour of creating an Emperor.

Q. Who was proclaim'd Emperor at long run?

L

A. Ta-

*A. Tacitus*, who was elected by the Senate.

Q. How old was he at that time?

*A.* He was Seventy Years old, and reign'd Six Months.

Q. Where died he?

*A.* At *Tarsus* a City of *Cilicia*, of a Fever, occasion'd by the Fatigues he was oblig'd to endure in his War against the *Scythians*.

Q. Pray acquaint me with his Character?

*A.* He was grave, and of a sweet disposition, temperate, and capable to govern very well; he was sober at his Meals, he loved Hunting and Building, which he understood perfectly well: And what deserves particular mention, he valued himself upon being a Namesake and a Relation of that Eminent Historian *Tacitus*.

### *Florianus the Thirty ninth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1015. Of the Birth of J. C. 275.*

Q. WHO succeeded *Tacitus*?

*A.* His Brother *Florianus*.

Q. Did his Reign last long?

*A.* No; for two or three Months after his Election, seeing *Probus* was elected Emperor by the greatest part of the Army, he open'd a Vein, and after that manner died, in the Year of J. C. 276.

# Probus the Fortieth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1016. Of the Birth of J. C. 276.

Q W Hose Son was *Probus* ?

A. He was according to some the Son of a Labourer in *Dalmatia*; or as others would have it, the Son of one *Maximilian* a Collonel in the Army.

Q. What Station was he in when the Soldiers declar'd him Emperor ?

A. He was Governor of *Syria*.

Q. As soon as the Senate had confirm'd his Election, what Expedition did he go upon ?

A. He made War against the *Germans*, who after the death of *Aurelianus* had made themselves Masters of one part of *Gaul*: These *Germans* were the true *Franks*, whom he entirely defeated, and expell'd the Country. Then he entred *Germany*, the greatest part of which he subdued, and reduced to the form of a *Roman* Province.

Q. Whither went he afterwards ?

A. Into *Asia*, where he beat the *Persians* several times, and constrain'd them to demand a Peace; he likewise overthrew *Saturninus* the Governor of *Syria*, who had revolted against him.

Q. What other memorable Actions did he perform ?

A. He had the same Success against *Pro-*

*culus* and *Bonofus*, who had usurp'd the Imperial Authority in *Gaul*, of which place they were Governors, and having there defeated and taken them Prisoners, he order'd them to be hang'd.

Q. Who was this *Bonofus* ?

A. A good Captain, but an excessive Drinker; which made the Emperor *Aurelianus* say of him by way of Raillery, That *he was born not to Live, but to Drink.*

Q. How did they call him when he was hang'd ?

A. See, said they, 'tis not a Man, but a Bottle, that hangs there.

Q. Did *Probus* live many years after these Conquests ?

A. No ; for as he march'd through *Illyrium*, he was slain at *Sirmium* by his Soldiers.

Q. What was it that occasioned this heavy Misfortune upon him ?

A. 'Twas because he treated them with too much severity, and employ'd them in building or repairing the Publick Works.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. Six Years, and Four Months.

Q. What Men of Note liv'd about this time ?

A. *Manes*, the Father of the *Manicheans*, pretending himself to be the *Paraclet*, propagated his Impious Doctrines in *Persia*, from whence they infected the Neighbouring Countries. At last he was fled alive there by the King's Command.

Carus

## Carus the Forty first Emperor.

*The Year of Rome 1012. Of the Birth of J. C. 282.*

Q. WHO succeeded next in the Empire?

A. *Carus*, who as soon as he found himself possess'd of this Dignity, took his two Sons, *Carinus* and *Numerianus*, Partners with him in the Empire, and procured them to be declared *Cæsars*.

Q. To what place did he send *Carinus*?

A. To *Gaul*, to fight against the *Franks*, a German People, who had made a new Irruption into that Countrey.

Q. And where was *Carus* employ'd?

A. He marched himself against the *Persians* with *Numerianus* in his Company, and took *Mesopotamia* from them. Nay, he was desirous to extend his Conquests beyond *Ctesiphon*, but died in that Expedition.

Q. After what manner did he end his days?

A. He was found dead in his Tent after a terrible Tempest?

Q. To what did the *Romans* ascribe his Death?

A. To the Divine Vengeance, for endeavouring to carry his Victories beyond *Ctesiphon*; because there was an Ancient Oracle which forbid the *Romans* to extend their Empire beyond that Capital City of the *Persians*.

## Numerianus the Forty second Emperor.

*The Year of Rome 1022 Of the Birth of J. C. 282.*

Q. WAS not *Numerianus* mightily concern'd for his Father's Death ?

A. He was so afflicted at it, that the Tears he shed incessantly upon this occasion, so far injur'd his Eyesight, that he was forced to be carried in a close Litter, because he could not endure the light.

Q. What became of him at last ?

A. His Father-in-Law *Aper*, who was Captain of the Guards, and had an Ambition to be Emperor, got him to be assassinated in this Litter.

Q. Did not *Aper* take care to conceal his death from the Army ?

A. That the Soldiers might not have the least suspicion of the matter, he accompanied the Litter, as if the Emperor had been still alive in it.

Q. What Answer did he give those persons that asked to see him ?

A. That the Emperor had given Orders not to let the Litter be open'd, because the Day-light extremely incommoded his eyes.

Q. Who commanded the Army all this while in the Emperor's Name ?

A. *Aper*, who by this means pretended to possess himself soon of the Empire ; but the noisom smell of the dead body discover'd his Villany,



Villany, and gave occasion to *Diocletian*, one of the Principal Officers of the Army, to kill him upon the spot.

Q. And did this Action please the Army?

A. They liked it so well, that they immediately with one common consent proclaim'd him Emperor, without considering that they had another Lawful Emperor still living.

Q. Who was he?

A. *Carinus*, the Brother of *Numerianus*.

### *Carinus the Forty third Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1022. Of the Birth of J. C. 282.*

Q. Where was *Carinus* when he heard that his Father was dead, and his Brother *Numerianus* assassinated?

A. He was then in *Gaul*, where he minded nothing else but satisfying his Brutal Appetite.

Q. Was he not surprized when he receiv'd advice that *Diocletian* was proclaim'd Emperor, and was marching towards him to dispute the Legality of his Title?

A. Yes, and immediately made a Truce with his Vices to go and fight him.

Q. Where was the Battel fought?

A. In *Mæsia*, a Province of *Asia Minor*.

Q. Which side got the better on't?

A. *Carinus* had obtain'd the Victory, but as he pursued the Enemy in their flight, he

was assassinated by a Collonel of his own Army.

*Q.* For what Provocation?

*A.* Because he had formerly abused this Collonel's Wife.

*Q.* When did this happen?

*A.* In the Year of J. C. 285. after he had reign'd Three Years.

*Diocletian and Maximian, making together the Forty fourth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1024. Of the Birth of J. C. 284.*

*Q. Where was Diocletian born?*

*A.* In *Dalmatia*, of very obscure Parentage, but he prov'd a man of great Generosity.

*Q.* What was foretold concerning him?

*A.* That he should be made Emperor as soon as he had slain a Boar; upon which account he kill'd several in hunting, but to no purpose: At last when he had slain *Aper* the Captain of the Guards, he saw that was the Boar he was to kill; for which reason he cried out aloud, *I have kill'd the Boar*; and the Army proclaim'd him Emperor.

*Q.* After the Imperial Purple was thus conferr'd upon him, how did he manage Affairs?

*A.* Finding the Empire was invaded on every side, and that himself alone was not able to oppose the Violence of the *Barbarians*,

ans, he took his old Friend *Maximian*, an ill-bred clownish sort of a Brute, but a good Soldier, his Partner in the Empire.

Q. What did these two do in conjunction?

A. They chose each of them *Constantius Chlorus*, and *Galerius*, to command their Armies.

Q. What method did they take to engage them more strongly in their Interests?

A. They created them *Cæsars*, and afterwards obliging them to be divorced from their Wives, *Diocletian* gave his Daughter *Valeria* to *Galerius*, and *Maximian* his Daughter *Theodora* to *Constantius*.

Q. These two Emperors and two *Cæsars*, were they successful in their Wars?

A. They were so fortunate in all their Attempts against the Enemies of the Empire, that they obtain'd as many Victories as they fought Battels; and after they had spent ten years thus in their Wars, crown'd with Glory and Success, they entred all four Triumphantly into *Rome*, where *Diocletian* caused himself to be call'd *Jovianus*, and *Maximian* took the Title of *Herculianus*.

Q. After these two Great Men had made themselves absolute Masters of the Empire, what is it that Historians tell us they did?

A. To the great amazement of all the world, both of them voluntarily quitted the Empire, *Diocletian* at *Nicomedia*, and *Maximian* at *Milan*.

Q. Where did *Diocletian* pass his Retirement ?

A. At *Salone*, a small City of *Dalmatia*, the place of his Nativity, where he spent the remainder of his life in cultivating his Gardens.

Q. And where did *Maximian* live privately ?

A. In *Lucania*.

Q. How long did they reign ?

A. *Diocletian* reign'd almost Twenty Years, and *Maximian* Eighteen.

Q. Was not *Diocletian* a cruel Persecutor of the Christians ?

A. Out of an implacable Malice to the Professors of that Religion, he design'd to extirpate them utterly out of the world ; and what by the Cruelty of his Edicts, the Bigotry of his Ministers, and the barbarous Variety of his Torments, made a greater havock of them than any of his Predecessors. In *Egypt* only, a Hundred and fourteen thousand are said to be put to death, and Seven hundred thousand sent into Banishment. The *Thebaan* Legion, together with their Commander *Mauritius*, were cut off by *Maximian* ; but this relation by some Modern Critics is look'd upon to be Fabulous.

Q. Was not *Maximian* soon weary of this retired life ?

A. Yes ; and being desirous to leave it, in order to reassume the Imperial Dignity, he earnestly importunes *Diocletian* to remedy those

those Evils which *Constantius* and *Galerius* had occasion'd by their ill conduct.

Q. What answer did *Diocletian* return him?

A. Showing him the Coleworts growing in his Garden, he told him he took a greater pleasure to plant them, than to govern the Empire.

Q. What courses did *Maximian* take, finding himself despised and neglected by all the world?

A. He withdrew to his Daughter, who was the Wife of *Constantius*, and endeavouring to engage her to poison her own Husband, she discover'd his Perfidiousness to *Constantius*, who caus'd him to be slain.

*Galerius and Constantius making together the Forty fifth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1044. Of the Birth of J. C. 304.*

Q. **W**hen were *Galerius* and *Constantius* proclaimed Emperors?

A. They did not take possession of the Empire till *Diocletian* and *Maximian* had abdicated.

Q. What were they before they were advanced to that Honour?

A. They were only *Cæsars*.

Q. How did they divide the Empire between them?

A. *Constantius* contented himself with *Britain*.

*tain* and *Gaul*, and *Galerius* had the rest of the *Roman Empire* for his share.

Q. What did *Galerius* do when he found himself unable to support so weighty a Charge ?

A. He associated *Severus* and *Maximin* with himself, whom he created *Cæsars*.

Q. What Governments did he bestow upon them ?

A. He gave the Government of *Italy* to *Severus*, that of the *East* to *Maximin*, and as for his own share, he contented himself with *Illyrium*.

Q. What was *Constantius's* Character ?

A. He was of an agreeable, sweet, and merciful Disposition ; but as for *Galerius* he was of a quite contrary temper, he declared himself a mortal Enemy of the Christians, and massacred a whole Town of them in *Phrygia* ; nay, he would have fain engaged *Constantius* to persecute them.

Q. What Judgments did these Cruelties draw down upon his head ?

A. God permitted him to be seized by an infamous and nasty Disease, during which he saw himself devour'd alive by Worms, and so died.

Q. How did *Constantius* behave himself ?

A. Making as if he really design'd to persecute the Christians, he commanded all the Officers of his Household, who were Christians, to change their Religion, otherwise they should lose their Places.

Q. And

Q. And were any of them so faint-hearted and wavering as to prefer the renouncing of their Religion before the loss of their Employments ?

A. Several of them were so ; but the Emperor sent them away with disgrace, saying, That those who were not true to their God, would never be faithful to their Prince.

Q. How did he treat those that continued firm in their Religion ?

A. He kept them still in his Service, and highly commended their Fidelity.

Q. How long did *Constantius* possess the Empire ?

A. Two years , after which he died at *York* between the Arms of his Son, *Constantine* the Great.

Q. Whom did *Constantius* leave his Successor behind him ?

A. His Son *Constantine* the Great, who signalized himself exceedingly by his Courage, and a thousand noble Actions.

Q. Wherein did he particularly distinguish himself from his Predecessors ?

A. In that he was the first Emperor that embraced the Christian Faith.

Constantine *the Great the Forty sixth*  
*Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1046. Of the Birth of J. C. 306.*

Q. WHO was the Mother of *Constantine the Great*?

A. *Helen*, whom some Historians make a *British* Woman, but with what probability, let the Learned judge.

Q. Why was the Sirname of *Great* conferr'd upon him?

A. For his great Exploits and Performances in War. He was the first Christian Emperor.

Q. What happen'd to him in the course of his life?

A. The news of his being Emperor having arrived at *Rome*, *Maxentius* the Son of that *Herculius* who had renounced the Empire, was elected and proclaimed Emperor.

Q. How did *Maxentius* behave himself in the beginning of his Reign?

A. At first he seem'd to favour the Christians, in order to bring them over to his Party by this means ; but he did not treat them long after this manner, for he persecuted them with a thousand cruelties, and render'd himself odious by abundance of other Crimes.

Q. What was the consequence of these Barbarities?

A. He



*A.* He was defeated by *Constantine* the Great ; and God, who was pleas'd by a Miracle to draw this mighty Prince to the true Faith , shew'd him a Cross in the Air, to convince this Victorious Emperor that it was the Crucified Jesus who made him triumph over the Tyrant *Maxentius*.

*Q.* What did *Constantine* do after this ?

*A.* He gave his Sister in marriage to *Licinius*, who requited him very ill for this Honour ; for without any provocation he declared war against him , nor was so advantageous an Alliance able to make him live in good Terms with *Constantine*.

*Q.* How came he off at last ?

*A.* He was defeated, but his Wife by her continual intercession obtain'd of *Constantine* that he should not be put to death for his Crimes.

*Q.* And did *Constantine* yield to his Sister's Intreaties ?

*A.* Yes ; and was contented only with their banishing him to *Thessalonica*.

*Q.* Did *Licinius* continue long without attempting to make some disturbance ?

*A.* No, for the next year he rais'd new Commotions, and in this second Sedition was kill'd in the place of his Exile ?

*Q.* What had *Constantine* to do after he had put an end to these Civil Wars ?

*A.* He had enough to manage his own Family, where he had some Affairs that gave him abundance of uneasy moments, and sensibly touched him.

*Q.* What

*Q.* What happen'd to him there ?

*A.* *Faulst*, the Wife of this great Prince, became passionately in love, even to madness, with *Crispus*, who was *Cæsar*, and Son to *Constantine* by his first Wife, and attempted by her Caresses to induce him to answer her Brutal Passion.

*Q.* How did she succeed in her Amours ?

*A.* She tried all efforts, but vainly, to debauch this young Prince, who possess'd as great a share of Virtue as he did of Beauty.

*Q.* What courses did this Woman take, finding her self so despised ?

*A.* Her love being changed into hatred, carried her to those extremities against this innocent Prince, that she accus'd him before the Emperor with a design to force her ?

*Q.* What credit did this Accusation find ?

*A.* She had authority enough with the Emperor to be believed, and *Crispus*, though wholly guiltless of the matter, was condemn'd to die, which was accordingly executed.

*Q.* And did this Wickedness continue long unpunished ?

*A.* No, for the young Prince's Innocence was discover'd some time after, and then *Constantine*, by way of Retaliation, justly put the Empress to death.

*Q.* What glorious things did *Constantine* do in his Reign ?

*A.* He enriched and adorned, *Ann. Dom.* 336. the City of *Constantinople* (which took its new Name from him, but before was called

called *Byzantium*) so magnificently with the Spoils of his Enemies, that it went by the name of New *Rome*, as the Country of *Thrace*, where it stands, still goes by the name of *Romelia*.

Q. What warlike Exploits did this Prince perform ?

A. He defeated his Enemies, and particularly overthrew the *Sarmatians* in several parts of the *Roman* Empire.

Q. Did he live any long time after his Conquests ?

A. No; he died on *Whitsunday*, in the Year of our Lord 337. in the Suburbs of *Nicomedia*, where he had received Baptism.

Q. From whose hands did he receive Baptism ?

A. He was baptized by Pope *Sylvester*.

Q. Was not the *Nicene* Council celebrated in his Reign ?

A. *Arius*, a Presbyter of *Alexandria*, having denied the Divinity of our Blessed Saviour, *Constantine* to oppose the farther spreading of this Heresy, in the Year 325. summons a Council of Bishops, which consisted in all of Three hundred and eighteen, to meet at *Nice*, a City of *Bithynia*, where they made *Arius* recant his impious Doctrine, and compiled the *Nicene* Creed.

Q. What other remarkable things happen'd in his time ?

A. His Mother *Helen*, a woman of much piety, but mixt with a great deal of Super-

Superstition, which now began openly to infect the Church, is reported to have found the very Cross on which J. C. suffered. In memory of which Invention the *Roman* Church keeps a solemn Festival on the Third of *May*.

Q. What Learned Men flourished now?

A. *Lactantius*, the worthy Disciple of *Arnobius*, and Præceptor to *Crispus*, *Constantine's* Son, employed his Eloquence, of which he was a great Master, in confuting the Errors of Paganism, and defending the Truth of the Christian Religion.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Two. The latter was *Fausta*, the Daughter of *Maximian*.

Q. How many Children had he by *Fausta*?

A. Three Sons, *Constantine*, *Constans*, and *Constantius*, and two Daughters, whose names were *Flavia Julia Constantina*, and *Helena*.

Q. What did he leave to these Three Princes?

A. He was so overseen in his Politicks as to commit that unpardonable Solecism of leaving them all three Joint-heirs of his Empire, which they divided among them.

Q. What had the Eldest for his Dividend?

A. He had for his share *Gaul*, and all beyond the *Alpes*.

Q. What had *Constans*?

A. He possess'd *Rome*, *Italy*, *Afric*, *Sicily*, and

and the other Isles, *Sclavonia*, *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, and *Greece*.

Q. What fell to *Constantius's* share ?

A. He was Master of *Asia*, of the *East*, and of *Ægypt*.

Q. Give me a description of *Constantine the Great* ?

A. He had a noble Air, a great Soul ; he was sincere, valiant and modest, well skill'd in the *Latin* and *Greek* Languages, an excellent Horseman, bold, but provident in all his Enterprizes ; full-faced, he had a thick Neck, his Nose somewhat flat, his Eyes sparkling, his Hair thin, he shaved all his Beard, which none of his Predecessors from *Adrian* used to do.

Q. How many Brothers do they say *Constantine the Great* had ?

A. Two: viz. *Constans* the Father of *Julian*, and *Dalmatius* who left two Sons behind him, one of whom named likewise *Dalmatius* was created *Cæsar* in the Year of our Lord 335.

Q. What was the name of *Dalmatius's* Second Son ?

A. *Annibalianus*.

*The Division of the Empire between the three Sons of Constantine the Great, making together the Forty seventh Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1077. Of the Birth of J. C. 337.*

**Q.** **W**Hat were the Names of these three Sons ?

**A.** The First was called *Constantine*, the Second *Constantius*, and the Third *Constans*.

**Q.** After they had divided the Empire between themselves, how did they manage Affairs ?

**A.** They fell at Variance, which occasioned bloody Civil Wars; each of them being desirous to Enlarge his Territories, but they were all destroy'd at last, one after another.

**Q.** Where was *Constantine* the Younger Born ?

**A.** At *Arles*, and was Created *Cæsar* in the Year 317, but he held the Consulship almost Four Months.

**Q.** Upon whom did he make War ?

**A.** Upon his Brother *Constans*, and thinking to take away those Provinces from him, which he possess'd by the Dividend which his Father made of the Empire; he Marched with his Forces into *Italy*, where he was Slain, and thrown into the River *Ælna*, near *Aqui-*

*Aquileia*, where *Constans* was at that time.

Q. How Old was he when this Accident befel him ?

A. Twenty Five Years Old, and had Reign'd Three of them.

Q. What did *Constans* Inherit by his Death ?

A. He had *Gaul*, *Spain*, and Great Britain.

Q. When was *Constans* Third Son to *Constantine* the Great, according to Historians, Created *Cæsar* ?

A. Upon *Christmas* Day in the Year 333.

Q. What were the First Exploits that *Constans* perform'd ?

A. He Vanquish'd the *Franks*, and compelled them to make an Alliance with him ; his great Merits and the Sweetness of his Temper being Invincible Charms, that drew the Affections of all Mankind after him.

Q. What do you particularly observe of him in History ?

A. He always took the Part of the *Orthodox*, against the *Arians* who Disturb'd the Tranquility of the Church.

Q. Did any Unfortunate Accident befal this Prince ?

A. *Magnentius* who had Usurp'd the Empire, put him to Death in *Ælua*, a City in *Roussillon*, in the Year 350 ; he was then about Thirty Years Old, and had Reign'd Thirteen of them.

Q. When was *Constantius* the Second Son of *Constantine* the Great, Created *Cæsar*.

A. In

*A.* In the year 324; but he dishonoured this high Dignity, by murdering several of his Relations, as also by espousing and professing the *Arian* Heresy; for suffering himself to be seduced by the Flatteries of his Wife, and the Insinuations of some Heretics, he persecuted the Church, and banish'd the Orthodox Bishops.

*Q.* Upon whom did *Constantius* make War?

*A.* Upon *Sapores* King of *Persia*, a great Persecutor of the Christians; but *Constantius* had the worst in all the Battels and all the Sieges he was engag'd in.

*Q.* Who was it that got himself declared Emperor by the Army in *Hungary*?

*A.* *Vetranio*, at the same time when *Magnentius* usurp'd the Sovereign Authority.

*Q.* What care did *Constantius* take to oppose his Designs?

*A.* He marched Westwards to fight *Vetranio*, and obliged *Magnentius* to retire to *Lyons*, where he laid violent hands upon himself.

*Q.* After *Constantius* had made himself sole Master of the Empire, how did he behave himself?

*A.* He became so insolent, that he once more began to persecute the Catholic Prelates, so that the Church was in a very miserable condition under this detestable Prince.

*Q.* How stood the Affairs of the Church in his time?

*A.* *Arian*



*A. Arianism* almost universally prevail'd ; and only the Bishop of *Rome*, and *S. Athanasius*, who compil'd the Creed bearing his name, were left to stem the Tide.

Q. When was *Julian*, afterwards firnam'd the *Apostate*, made *Cesar* ?

*A. In the Year 355*, and having beaten the *Barbarians* out of *Gaul*, he was Saluted Emperor about the Year 360, and Marched with his Army towards the *East*.

Q. What Measures did *Constantius* take, when he heard he was in *Illyrium*, and was Marching directly against him ?

*A. He changed his Design of an Expedition he had projected against the Persians*, and came back from *Antioch* to *Tarsus*, where he first felt his Fever, and from thence to *Mopsuestia* in *Cilicia*, so call'd from the Fountains of *Mopsus*, where he died.

Q. How old was he then ?

*A. Forty Years*, and had reign'd in all 25 Years 3 Months and 15 Days.

*Julian the Apostate, the Forty eighth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1101. Of the Birth of J. C. 361.*

Q. WHO succeeded *Constantius* in the Empire ?

*A. Julian the Apostate.*

Q. Where was he born ?

*A. In Byzantium*, in the Year 331.

Q. Whose

Q. Whose Son was he ?

A. The Son of *Constans*, Brother to *Constantine* the Great, and of *Basilina*.

Q. Whom did he marry ?

A. *Helena*.

Q. Why was he surnam'd *the Apostate* ?

A. Because he turn'd *Pagan* after he had been educated in the Christian Religion, and had read the Holy Scriptures in the Church before the Congregation.

Q. When was he sole Emperor ?

A. In the Year 363, he was proclaim'd *Augustus* by his Soldiers, but he had been created *Cæsar* before his Election to the Empire.

Q. Where was he proclaim'd Emperor ?

A. At *Paris*.

Q. What did he do in the beginning of his Reign ?

A. He put all the Friends of *Constantius* to death, or sent them into banishment ; he only encourag'd the *Augurs*, the *Victimarii*, and the Philosophers ; he order'd the Idolatrous Temples of the Heathens to be open'd, and having renounced the Faith, he assumed the Title of *Pontifex Maximus*. Nor was this all ; for the more to vex the Christians, he made scandalous condescensions to the *Jews*, and began to erect a Temple for them at *Jerusalem*, which he was obliged soon to leave off ; for Globes of Fire breaking out from under the Foundations, disturbed the Workmen ; as *Ammianus Marcellinus*, a Pagan Writer, witnesses.

Q. What

Q. What befel him upon this ?

A. He became the Laughter and Contempt of the People of *Antioch*.

Q. What course did he take to revenge the Affronts they put upon him ?

A. He writ a Satyric Letter upon this occasion, call'd the *Misopogan*, or Beard-hater.

Q. Upon whom did *Julian* make war ?

A. Upon the *Persians*; but having after the second Battel insolently refused to comply with the just Articles of Peace which they offer'd him, and burnt the Ships that follow'd him, and carried Provisions for the Army, he was surrounded on all sides by the Enemy.

Q. What became of him at last ?

A. He had the mortification to find himself cut off from all hopes of Assistance, and was wounded by an Arrow in the Fight, but 'twas never known from what side it came.

Q. Did he say any thing as he was dying ?

A. He desperately took out a handful of Blood which gushed from the Wound, and throwing it up into the Air, cry'd out, *Vi-  
visti Galilee*, O *Galilean* thou hast at last overcome me.

Q. What did he mean by these words ?

A. That our Blessed Saviour, whom he had so often provoked by his Sacriledges, and other indignities, and whom now he

M

found

found to his cost to be the great Judge of the Universe, would take a full vengeance for the Crimes and Blasphemies he had uttered against his Sacred Person.

Q. What sort of a man was *Julian* the Apostate?

A. He had sparkling Eyes, a stern wandering Countenance, a straight Nose, his Mouth somewhat of the biggest, a slit in his under Lip, a thick Beard which he wore picked, his Shoulders large and moving, his Head hanging down, which he always turned on one and t'other side, he walked very fast although he was but little, and made a great noise when he laughed. How great a Warriar he was, the *Alemans*, *Franks* and *Saxons*, whom he overcame, do testify, and his remaining Works are undeniable proofs of his Wit and Ingenuity.

### *Jovian the Forty Ninth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1103. Of the Birth of J. C. 363.*

Q. **W**H O was proclaimed Emperor after the death of *Julian the Apostate*?

A. *Jovian*, the Son of Count *Varro-nianus*.

Q. Whom did he marry?

A. *Charitas*, the Daughter of *Lucillianus*, by whom he had a Son named *Varro*, whom he made Consul.

Q. What

Q. What do Historians tell us of this Prince?

A. That he was a handsome well-shaped man, illustrious for his Birth, but more for his Piety.

Q. What did he principally apply himself to in the beginning of his Reign?

A. To draw the Souldiers from Superstition. He commanded Jesus Christ to be adored by all those Soldiers who had abandon'd his worship.

Q. Was he engaged in any Wars?

A. No, for in the condition he found the Army after the defeat and death of *Julian*, he was obliged to make a Truce of Thirty years with *Sapores*, to whom he yielded the greatest part of *Mesopotamia*.

Q. Did he live a long time after this?

A. No; he died of a sickness in the Thirty third year of his Age, after he had reigned 7 months, 22 days.

Q. What particular things were done in his Reign?

A. He generally cancell'd all the Edicts of the Apostate which were favourable to the Pagans; he restored to the Faithful, and to the Churches all their Goods, their Honours, their Revenues, and their Priviledges.

*Valentinian the Great, the Fiftieth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1104. Of the Birth of J. C. 364.*

**Q.** **W**HO was named Emperor after the death of *Jovian*?

**A.** The Army chose *Valentinian* Emperor at *Nice*, because in *Julian's* time he had preferr'd his Religion to his Preferment.

**Q.** What did he do as soon as he saw himself possess'd of the Imperial Throne?

**A.** He made his Brother *Valens* his Partner in the Empire, and gave him the Government of the *East*.

**Q.** What part did he reserve for himself?

**A.** The *West*?

**Q.** What sort of a man was *Valentinian*?

**A.** He was a very virtuous Prince, and a strict observer of Justice; very ingenious, and a religious keeper of his word.

**Q.** With whom did he make war?

**A.** With the *Saxons* and *Sarmatians*, whom he defeated, and oblig'd them to demand a Peace by their Ambassadors whom they sent to him.

**Q.** And what said *Valentinian* to them?

**A.** He fell into such a fit of anger, to which he was always very subject, that he was seized with an Apoplexy.

**Q.** Did he dye of it?

**A.** Yes, in *Hungary*, being fifty five years old.

**Q.** How

Q How many years did he reign?

A. Twelve years.

Q. Was he baptized before his death?

A. No; nevertheless he did not forbear to give sensible proofs of the Religion he profess'd, and commanded the Pagan Temples to be shut.

*Valens the Fifty first Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1104. Of the Birth of J. C. 364.*

Q. What Enemy had *Valens* to fight with in the beginning of his Empire?

A. *Procopius* who was related to *Julian*, and was his greatest Enemy.

Q. Did *Valens* make War against him?

A. The dispute between them was bloody, but at the upshot *Valens* defeated *Procopius*, took him prisoner, and put him to death.

Q. What other Wars was he involved in?

A. He had a continual war with the *Goths* till their King *Athalaricus* having begg'd a Peace of him, he granted it, and afterwards kindly entertain'd him, at such time as being persecuted by the *Hunns*, he came to desire this Emperor's Protection, who settled him in *Thrace*.

Q. How did the *Goths* behave themselves at that time?

A. Not being able to bear the insufferable Avarice of *Lupicinus* their Governour, they

they took up Arms against the *Romans*, and invaded *Thrace*.

Q. What memorable things happen'd in the course of this War?

A. *Valens* fell into the hands of his Enemies, who burnt him in a Cottage.

Q. How old was he when this Accident befel him?

A. He was fifty years old, and had reign'd fourteen years and four months.

Q. What Qualities were observable in him?

A. He had both good and bad ones. He was choleric, cruel, and envious. The *Arian* Heresy, with which he was infected, corrupted all his other good Inclinations.

Q. What Learned men flourished in his time?

A. *Gregory* and *Basil*, who had contracted a friendship in their Youth at *Athens*, where they follow'd their Studies. The former born at *Nazianzum* in *Cappadocia*, from whence Sirnamed *Nazianzenus*. The other born in *Pontus*, and afterwards made Bishop of *Cæsarea*.

Q. What Acts of Cruelty did he ever commit?

A. He put all people to death who had the curiosity to know the name of his Successor; and being inform'd that the first Letters of his Name were to begin with *Theod*, he put to death old *Theodosius* the Father of *Theodosius* the Great, who was afterwards *Valentinian's* Successor.

Q. What



Q. What considerable Actions had that Illustrious old man perform'd?

A. He had done the State great Service by his Counsels, beaten the *Picts* and *Scots* out of *Britain*, and defeated *Firminus* the Tyrant, who ravag'd *Afric* with an Army of *Moors*.

Q. How many Children had *Valentinian* the Brother of *Valens*?

A. Two. The first named *Gratianus*, who was declared *Augustus* by his Father in the City of *Amiens*.

Q. What was the Second Son's name?

A. He was called *Valentinian* the Younger, to distinguish him from his Father.

Q. What do Historians tell us of *Valentinian* the Younger?

A. That after the death of his Father he was declar'd *Augustus* at the Age of Ten years by the Soldiers, as well as by his Brother *Gratian*.

### *Gratian the Fifty second Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1115. Of the Birth of J. C. 375.*

Q. What Qualities was *Gratian* master of?

A. He had a Body well made, and a Soul of a vast extent, and great elevation.

Q. Don't Historians observe some defects in him?

A. He had some, but such as would not

have appear'd so conspicuous in an indifferent Fortune ; he had an incurable aversion to State-affairs, which ought to have taken up his most serious moments.

Q Did not this sink his Reputation mightily with his Subjects ?

A. Yes, and what they could not suffer but with the utmost indignation, was to see him frequently prefer a Barbarian Soldier to a *Roman*, although the *Roman* was the elder of the two, and had more merits to plead.

Q. How did he manage matters after the death of *Valens* ?

A. He took as Partner in the Empire with him *Theodosius*, the Grandson of that *Theodosius* who was slain by the order of *Valens*.

Q. What forced him upon this Conduct ?

A. Because he found himself not strong enough to support so furious a War as he was then engaged in ; and besides the *Goths* ravaged *Thrace*, and the other Provinces of the Empire at pleasure.

*Theodosius the Great, the Fifty Third Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1132. Of the Birth of J.C. 392.*

Q **H**OW old was *Theodosius* when he was taken Partner into the Empire ?

A. He

*A.* He was thirty three Years old, and his first appearance on the Imperial Seat gave sufficient proofs of his Courage and Prudence.

*Q.* Where was he born ?

*A.* In *Spain*, at *Lauca* a Town of *Gallicia*. He imitated all the Vertues, but none of the Vices of his Countryman *Trajan*. He summon'd the Second Oecumenical Council, that of *Nice* being the first, at *Constantinople*, Ann. Dom. 381. wherein, besides the confirmation of the *Nicene* Council by an Hundred and fifty Bishops, *Macedonius* the Heretic was condemn'd, and the Orthodox Belief concerning the Holy Ghost, established.

*Q.* What memorable Exploits did he perform ?

*A.* He vanquish'd all the Enemies of the *Roman* name, and gave peace to his Subjects.

*Q.* Was not this Prince a sure *Asylum* to all Kings that were persecuted, and in distress ?

*A.* Yes, he supported them against all those who conspir'd their destruction, and the subversion of their Governments.

*Q.* What instances can you give me of this his great Generosity ?

*A.* *Athalaricus* King of the *Goths*, being turn'd out of his Kingdom by his own Rebellious Subjects, fled to *Constantinople*, where he was very honourably receiv'd by *Theodosius*.

Q. Did that Prince enjoy the Emperor's Favours any considerable time ?

A. No ; for tho he had escaped Death in so many Battels, yet he ended his days when he expected to pass the remainder of his life in great tranquillity.

Q. Was not *Theodosius* concern'd at the loss of him ?

A. He would receive no manner of Consolation ; nay, he was so profuse in the Celebration of his Funeral, that it was no less Magnificent than what was used to be kept for any of the deceased Emperors.

Q. Were not the *Goths* mightily astonished at this ?

A. It made so deep an Impression upon them, that seeing themselves without a Master, they were unanimously of an opinion, That they could not find a better than *Theodosius*.

Q. Did the *Goths* then submit themselves to this great Prince ?

A. Yes ; and he distributed Lands among them for their maintenance with great liberality.

Q. What remarkable matters happen'd after this ?

A. The Tyrant *Maximus* made himself Master of *Britain* and *Gaul*, and chose *Triers* for his Capital City.

Q. What Acts of Cruelty did that Usurper commit ?

A. He

*A.* He put the unfortunate *Gratian* to death at *Lyons*, who was Twenty five Years old.

*Q.* Did not *Theodosius* revenge his death?

*A.* Yes; and plac'd young *Valentinian* ( who had been forc'd out of *Italy* ) upon his Throne again.

*Q.* As to the business of Religion, how did he behave himself?

*A.* He reconcil'd himself to the Church, and to the great St. *Ambrose*; and notwithstanding all the efforts of the *Arians* to debauch him in his Principles, and engage him in their Party, yet he still continued to adhere to the Ancient Truth.

*Q.* What Character do Historians bestow upon him?

*A.* That he was inferior to none of his Predecessors either in Virtue or Merit; that he never made War but out of meer necessity, and was successful in all his Military Undertakings: In fine, that his Goodness charm'd all the world; and his engaging Behaviour gain'd him the hearts of all that approach'd him.

*Q.* What was his chief Infirmary?

*A.* He was naturally Choleric, but he seldom suffer'd his Passion to get the better of him, and then after some short intervals it was no difficult matter to appease him. He had once design'd utterly to destroy the City of *Antioch*, for taking down the Statue of *Augusta Placilla*, but was at last persuaded by

by their Bishop *Flavianus* to pardon them. At another time he massacred seven thousand men in a Theatre at *Theſſalonica*, for killing their President.

Q. Which was the last Victory that *Theodosius* obtain'd?

A. 'Twas that which he gain'd over *Eugenius*, whose Troops had join'd those of *Arbogaster*, who had caus'd *Valentinian* to be strangled in his own Palace at *Vienna* in *Dauphine*.

Q. *Theodosius* then vanquish'd these two Tyrants?

A. Yes; and 'twas rather by a particular Protection of Heaven, than any human strength.

Q. What became of them?

A. *Eugenius* was taken Prisoner, and *Arbogaster* kill'd himself.

Q. Did *Theodosius* the Great live long after these Victories?

A. No; for shortly after this Generous Prince died at *Milan*, A. D. 395. being Fifty Years old, according to the common Opinion.

Q. To whom did he bequeath his Empire?

A. He divided it between his two Sons, *Arcadius* and *Honorius*.

Q. What had *Arcadius* for his share?

A. He had the Empire of the East, and *Honorius* that of the West.

Q. What

*Q.* What Eminent Men flourish'd under his Reign?

*A.* *St. Jerome*, so profoundly skill'd in the *Hebrew Tongue*, to whom the Learned World is highly oblig'd for his great Performances upon the *Scriptures*. *St. Ambrose*, Bishop of *Milan*, who employ'd his Eloquence against the *Arians*. *St. Austin*, Bishop of *Hippo in Afric*, the most universally Learned Father of the *Latin Church*. *Ausonius*, a famous Poet and Orator, and Master to the Emperor *Gratian*, who rewarded him with the Consulate. *Paulinus*, Bishop of *Nola in Campania*, who is first reported to have put Bells to a Sacred use; from whence they are called *Nole* and *Campanæ*.

### *Arcadius the Fifty fourth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1135. Of the Birth of J. C. 395.*

*Q.* **W** Hom did *Arcadius* marry?

*A.* *Eudoxia*, whom he suffer'd to govern absolutely as she thought fit; the consequences of which had like to have prov'd as fatal to Religion as it did to the Empire; for she banish'd *St. Chrysostom*, who had been translated from the See of *Antioch Constantinople*, only for inveighing against her Vices.

*Q.* Whom did he intrust at his death to be his Son's Guardian?

*A.* *Isdigerdes*, King of *Persia*, who acquitted

ted himself very honourably in this Trust; for he plac'd him under the Tuition of the Learned and Wise *Antiochus*; nay, he openly declared; That whoever attempted any thing against the Interest and Welfare of this young Prince, must expect to find him his Enemy.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. He died in the One and thirtieth year of his Age, and in the Eleventh of his, or rather his Wife's Reign, who died in Childhood.

### *Honorius the Fifty fifth Emperor.*

*The Year of Rome 1135. Of the Birth of J. C. 395.*

Q. Give me the true Character of *Honorius*?

A. He was of a sweet agreeable Disposition, an enemy to Application and Business; he even had an aversion to Publick Affairs; however, he was very zealous for the Christian Religion, in favour of which he made several Edicts.

Q. What remarkable things fell out in his Reign?

A. After the *Goths* had spread themselves all over *Italy*, and were Masters of the City of *Rome*, several Tyrants usurp'd the Sovereign Authority.

Q. Whom did these Tyrants nominate for their Emperor?

A. *Atta*.



*A. Attalus* the Son of *Alaricus*. *Honorius* offer'd to make him his Partner in the Empire, which he refused with a great deal of scorn and arrogance, and yet accepted the Imperial Dignity after it was offer'd to him by the Senate.

Q. Did he long possess the Empire?

*A.* No, he was soon stript of it; and being abandon'd by the *Gauls*, to whom he fled for Protection, he was taken Prisoner by *Constantius*, A. D. 415. and deliver'd to the Justice of the Emperor *Honorius*.

Q. And how did he use him?

*A.* He gave him his Life, and contented himself only with cutting off one of his hands.

Q. Why did he serve him so?

*A.* That this Rebel for the remainder of his life might carry the Punishment of his Crime about him, and have everlastingly before his eyes the marks of his Rebellion.

Q. What memorable Accidents happened after this?

*A.* One *Constantine* that commanded the Guards, and had nothing to recommend him but only his Name, was declared Emperor; but being taken Prisoner, was strangled at *Ravenna*. Then *Jovian* and *Sebastian* possess themselves of *Gaul*, but being seized at *Narbo*, were both put to death.

Q. Who was it that afterwards usurped the Empire of the *Gauls*?

*A. Heraclius*, who passed into *Italy* with a Navy

Navy of Seven hundred Sail, but being beaten there, he made his Escape to *Carthage*, where he was strangled.

Q. What other matters happened after the Death of these Tyrants?

A. The *Goths* entred *France* under the Conduct of their King *Ataulphus*.

Q. How old was the Emperor *Honorius*, when he died of his Dropsey?

A. Thirty five Years, A. D. 425.

Q. What sort of a Reign was his?

A. Nothing but a continued Scene of Troubles, Commotions, Tumults, and Wars, occasion'd by the *Vandals*, the *Hunns*, and other barbarous Nations, that daily pour'd new Swarms of People into the *Roman* Provinces: Towards the end of his Reign, A. D. 413, the *Burgundians* erected a new Kingdom towards the *Rhone*: The *Franks* A. D. 420, erected another in *Gaul*, from them call'd *France*, under their first King *Pharamond*: And the year following *Vallia* King of the *Goths*, after the death of *Ataulphus*, constituted a Kingdom in *Spain*. The *Vandals* possessed that part of it which was formerly call'd *Bætica*, and now from them *Andalusia*; as the *Goths* in conjunction with the *Alani*, fix themselves in *Provincia Tarraconensis*, which was afterwards called *Gothalandia*, and corruptly *Catalonia*. The beginning of the *Scotish* Kingdom too is generally placed about the year of our Lord 422; the *Scots* from *Ireland* settling themselves in the Northern parts of

of *Great Britain* under their King *Fergus*.

Q. What Learned men lived about these times ?

A. *Pelagius* a *Britain*, a warm Asserter of the Omnipotency of Free-Will, and as violent a Depressor of God's Grace ; whom *St. Austin* encounter'd so vigorously. *Prudentius*, *Sedulius*, and *Paulinus*, famous for Poetry, but infinitely exceeded by *Claudian*, who rais'd his Reputation as much by the Elegance and Sweetness of his Versification, as he lessen'd it by the Meanness of his Subject.

---

### *Of the Fall and Decay of the Roman Empire.*

Q. What were the principal Causes of the Decay of the *Roman Empire* ?

A. Pride, and Luxury, and Divisions at home ; the frequent Mutinies of the Army, who deposed their Emperors at pleasure ; and the perpetual Invasions of the *Northern Nations*.

Q. Who caused the greatest Desolations in the Empire ?

A. The *Goths*, the *Hunns*, the *Lombards*, and *Vandals*, who in their turn ravaged the several Provinces of it, erecting new Kingdoms, and establishing their Laws and Customs where ever they came.

Q. By

Q. By whom was *Rome* taken ?

A. It was taken and retaken by *Alarie* King of the *Goths*, A. D. 410. and about 1163 years after the building of it. For the space of three days, this Imperial City, which for Nine hundred years had defied the Attacks of all its Enemies, even of *Hannibal* himself, was ravag'd and plunder'd at the discretion of the barbarous Conquerors. Not long after it was taken by *Totila*, and after him by *Theodoricus*, who made so magnificent an Entry into it, that St. *Austin*, wholly astonish'd at so prodigious a show, wished that he had seen three things upon earth.

Q. What were they ?

A. *Jesus Christ* in the flesh, St. *Paul* in the Pulpit, and Ancient *Rome* in its splendor.

Q. Did not the *Roman Empire* for some time make a happy Progress ?

A. It advanc'd rather than decreas'd from *Julius Caesar* down to *Nero*; but afterwards *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, so weaken'd it by their Civil Wars, that it was scarce in a condition to preserve it self from the Insults of its Enemies.

Q. Who restored this Empire to its Ancient Splendor ?

A. In *Trajan's* time, as it possess'd the greatest Extent of Ground, so it visibly recover'd its former Reputation. From that Period it by degrees declin'd till the time of *Constantine the Great*, who by putting an end to all

all intestine Broils, retriev'd in some manner its ancient Credit; but through a fatal ill management did it a greater Injury at last, than all his Predecessors before him.

*Q.* How did that happen?

*A.* First he transplanted the Seat of the Empire from *Rome*, where it had so long inhabited, to *Constantinople*; by which means he abandon'd *Italy* and the Provinces which lay nearest it, to the Invasion of the *Barbarians*, and what was equally dangerous, to the Ambitious Attempts of the Bishops of *Rome*, who had always a mighty hankering after Temporals. Next, he considerably enfeebled it by dividing it between his Three Sons.

*Q.* How long did the *Eastern Empire* continue?

*A.* From the Sons of *Constantine the Great*, for the space of Twelve hundred years, or thereabout, to *Constantine Palæologus* the last Emperor of *Constantinople*, who was prest to death in the Crowd, when *Mahomet* the second Emperor of the *Turks* took the City of *Constantinople*, in the Year of the Creation of the World 5505, and of the Birth of J. C. 1453.

*Q.* How long was the Empire of the *East* in the possession of the *French*?

*A.* Fifty six years; viz. from the year 1204, to 1260.

*Q.* How came it to fall into the hands of the *French*?

*A.* By

*A.* By the Valour of *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, who made himself Emperor of *Constantinople*, and it was retaken by another *Baldwin*, the fourth of that name.

*Q.* In whose hands did the Western Empire continue?

*A.* The Emperors of *Constantinople* endeavour'd all they could to keep it under their obedience; and for that end sent their Deputies there, who had continual Brigues and Quarrels with the Popes, so that at last they had no manner of Authority or Credit in *Italy* about the time that *Charlemagne* was King of *France*.

*Q.* How did that happen?

*A.* Pope *Leo* the III<sup>d</sup>. finding himself now in a capacity to exercise that power of disposing of Empires, which his Predecessors had so long thirsted after; and besides having great obligations to the *French* Nation, who had protected the Holy See from the Insults of the *Lombards*, promoted *Charles* the Great to the Empire of the *West*.

*Q.* By whom was he proclaim'd Emperor?

*A.* By the consent of all the Estates; viz. the Clergy, the Nobility, and the People. The Pope himself placing the Imperial Crown upon his head.

*Q.* When did this happen?

*A.* On *Christmas-Day*, in *St. Peter's Church* at *Rome*, in the Year of our Lord 801.

*Q.* And

Q. And did this famous Conqueror acquit himself worthily in his place.

A. He lived Fourteen Years after his Elevation to this Dignity, and reign'd with that universal Esteem of the world, that they were used to say of him, *He was a Conqueror like Cæsar, Peaceable like Augustus, and a Restorer of the Church like Constantine.* He summon'd a Council at *Frankfort*, where the use of Images in Churches, confirm'd by the second Council of *Nice*, was condemn'd; and he died at *Aix la Chapelle* in *Germany*, in the 72<sup>d</sup>. Year of his Age.

Q. From whom did *Conradus I.* usurp the Imperial Crown?

A. From *Charles* the Simple King of *France*, who was Grandson to *Charles* the Great, and the only person left alive of the Race of that great Emperor.

Q. For what reason do they say *Leo III.* excited the People to proclaim *Charles* the Great, and bestow the Empire upon him, and his Descendents and Successors, the Kings of *France*?

A. For their Piety and Zeal to Holy Church. Nay, *Leo* the Third solemnly protested he would excommunicate all those that should presume to disturb them in the possession of the Imperial Dignity.

Q. Did it always continue in that Line?

A. No; for about fourscore and five years after this, Pope *Gregory V.* a *German* by Nation, and Cousin-German to the Emperor

*Otho*

*Otto* III. of the House of *Saxony*, to perpetuate the Empire in those of his own Country, made the Decree which is commonly called the *Golden Bull*, because the Seal is made of that rich Metal.

*Q.* What did the Pope ordain in this Bull?

*A.* That only the *Germans* should have a right to elect the Emperor; for which end he established Six Electors, Three Ecclesiastick, and Three Lay Princes. Others pretend they were established long before, and that this Pope did only confirm them.

*Q.* Who are the Ecclesiastick Electors?

*A.* The Archbishops of *Ments*, *Colen* and *Triers*, who are all Chancellors of the Empire, the first for *Germany*, the second for *Italy*, and the third for *France*.

*Q.* Who are the Secular Electors?

*A.* 1. The Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, Comptroller of the Household. 2. The Duke of *Saxony* Master of the Horse. 3. The Duke of *Brandenburg* Great Chamberlain.

*Q.* Was not one more added to the Secular Electors?

*A.* The King of *Bohemia* was taken into the number at first, to be Arbitrator in the Case, whenever the Votes fell equal on both sides.

*Q.* And has not a new Elector been added to them since?

*A.* Yes, for the Prince Palatine having forfeited his Electorate which was given to the



the Duke of *Bavaria*, they constituted another for him at the Peace of *Munster*. Since the late Revolution in *England*, the Emperor has been induced to create a new Electorate in favour of the Duke of *Hanover*, in consideration of the great Services he has done the Empire, particularly in this present Confederacy against *France*; but as 'tis opposed by several Princes of the Empire, who have enter'd their respective Protestations against it, we cannot positively tell what will become of this Affair.

Q. Who was the first of the House of *Austria* that obtain'd the Empire?

A. *Rodolphus* Earl of *Habsburgh*, whom after a tedious *Interregnum*, which had like to have proved fatal to the Empire, the Electors unanimously chose. He overcame *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia*, and in consequence of that Victory bestowed *Austria* upon his Son *Albert*, and laid the foundation of that powerful House, which has brought forth so many Emperors and Princes to *Europe*, and which ever since the days of *Charles* the Fifth, who first projected the Election of a King of the *Romans*, has enjoy'd the Empire.

*Of the Increase, Purity, and Decay of the Roman Eloquence and Learning.*

Q. IN what Condition was the *Roman* Language at first?

A. For

*A.* For the first Five hundred years, that is, till they had made themselves Masters of *Italy*, it continued very unpolite and barren; and produced no Authors of Eminence and Note. Their Speech is a corruption of the *Æolic Greek*, which was spoken in the Southern Provinces of that Countrey, called *Græcia Magna*, and now comprehends the Kingdom of *Naples*. Their Ecclesiastical Terms, as well as the Rites and Ceremonies, and whole body of their Theology, were borrowed from the *Hetruscans*.

*Q.* Who were the first *Roman* Authors?

*A.* Not to mention those whose Works are lost (for that would be an unnecessary labour) *Plautus* and *Terence*, have an established Reputation; *Plautus* seems to have proposed *Aristophanes*, the Author of the old Comedy, for his Pattern; as *Terence* copies *Menander*, and entertains us with the New.

*Q.* What Alterations did it receive afterwards?

*A.* From *Terence's* time, who flourished after the second *Punic* War, and is the standard of the *Latin* Dialogue and Conversation, by reason of their frequent Commerce with the *Greeks*, and other Politer Nations, their Language daily improved in all other parts. *Lucretius*, *Salust*, and *Catullus*, who flourished a little before the Civil Wars between *Cæsar* and

and *Pompey*, as they writ with a purity equal or above any that preceded them, so they are excell'd by few that follow'd after; and *Tully* complains that much of the force, and spirit, and majesty of their Language was lost even in his time. However, 'tis agreed on by most hands, that in *Augustus's* time it arrived to its highest pitch of perfection and purity, at which time *Virgil*, *Horace*, *Ovid*, *Tibullus*, *Propertius*, *Corn. Gallus*, *Manilius* (though others place him in the Reign of *Theodosius* the Younger); and not to mention any more, *Corn. Celsus* the Physician, and *Livy* the Historian, flourished.

Q. When did it begin to decline?

A. As by a Fate peculiar to all sublunary things, nothing continues long in the same state, but must either advance or go backward; the *Roman* Language began to decline soon after *Augustus*. Now and then, 'tis true, slept up an extraordinary Genius, that in spite of the Age he lived in, preserv'd the ancient Purity; as for instance, *Minutius Felix* under the Emperor *Severus*; but we have few Instances of this nature. For the first hundred years, and something more, it escaped tolerably well, but soon after *Trajan's* time, we find it was strangely corrupted.

Q. What Reasons are commonly assign'd for the decay of their Eloquence and Language?

A. The former is generally ascribed to the loss of their Liberty, and the subversion of the Old Government, which allow'd a

N

greater

greater latitude and freedom of speaking than they enjoy'd under their Emperors. Several Reasons may be given for the latter; as first, their affectation to incorporate so many *Greek* Words and Phrases into their Tongue; a Vanity complain'd of by *Juvenal*. In the Age before they seldom used them but in case of necessity, and even then, as is evident from *Tully's* Example, they writ them in *Greek*, and not in *Latin* Characters.

*Q.* What other Causes are assign'd for it?

*A.* The continual Irruptions of the Northern Nations, who like a mighty Torrent, swept every thing before them. Such prodigious swarms of people still breaking in upon them, could not but occasion a vast alteration in their Language. To this may be added the introducing of a new Religion, *viz.* the Christian, in the Empire; the Professors of which brought in with 'em a new set of Phrases and Words, that were none of the politeſt, and wholly unknown before, as seeming always to have a greater regard to the truth of what they delivered, than to the purity of their Diction.

*Q.* How did it fare after this?

*A.* From the Tenth to the middle of the 15th Century little or no Learning was stirring in these Western parts of the World: The Monks, who were the only people that possess any share of it, amusing themselves in the study of School-divinity, as 'tis commonly

monly call'd. Those that were the Historians in those Ages leaving nothing but miserable jejune Relations of things behind them, larded with frequent Miracles of their Saints, which seem to have been written in defiance of Eloquence as well as of good sense.

*Q.* How came it to revive again ?

*A.* 'Twas occasion'd by two remarkable Accidents that happen'd within a short space of one another. The first was the invention of Printing at *Mentz* in *Germany*, in the Year 1440. by the help of which, to the incredible benefit of the Learned World, we can print more Volumes in a day, and that more correctly, than the Ancients could have written in an year. The second was the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Turks* about twelve years after, which forced several of the Learned *Greeks* to quit their Native Countrey, and come into *Italy*, where they were forced to teach *Greek* for their own sustenance. Of this number were *Theoderus Gaza*, *Constantinus Lascharis*, *Chalcondilas*, *Chrysoloras*, *Trapezuntius*, who began to revive the study of that Language, which for the space of Five hundred years had been perfectly buried.

*Q.* What Persons of Note encouraged Learning at that time ?

*A.* Pope *Nicholas* the Fifth, that great Friend to the Muses, and Restorer of Letters, employ'd the most Learned Men of that Age to compare and revise the Old MSS.

and print them; and we are particularly obliged to him for putting out *Polybius*. After him *Aeneas Sylvius*, alias Pope *Pius* the Second, who was himself a man of great Learning, promoted it by his Example and Encouragement. About this time the Art of Painting, which had been totally lost for so many Ages, began to flourish in *Italy*; and in the compass of an hundred years arrived to its highest perfection.

Q. What were their principal Studies at this time?

A. To retrieve the purity of the *Latin* and *Greek* Tongues, and learn their Antiquities; for which end they convers'd with their Politest Authors, compar'd various Readings, turn'd over Glossaries and Old *Scholia* upon Ancient Historians, Orators and Poets; consulted old Inscriptions, examin'd old Statues and *Basso Relievos*, in which as *Italy* abounded above all other Countries of *Europe*, so it furnished them with a better opportunity to be skill'd in the Ancient Habits, Utensils, Sacrifices, &c. than the rest of their Neighbours. The most eminent men for this sort of Learning, were *Laurentius Valla*, *Pomponius Letus*, *Alexander ab Alexandro*, *Rodolphus Agricola*.

Q. How long was this Learning confin'd to *Italy*?

A. Not long; for although the *Italians* had the honour to revive it, and made a very considerable progress in it, yet about the

the latter end of the 15th Century, when Copies of Books were pretty well multiplied by Printing, Learning crost the *Alpes*, and soon after *Erasmus*, *Budeus*, *Beatus Rhennanus*, &c. dispersed that sort of Knowledge through *England*, *France*, *Germany*, and the *Low Countries*.

Q. What Learned men had we then in *England*?

A. In King *Henry* the VIIIth's time, which was the soonest that we came acquainted with the *Belles lettres* in *England*, we had an admirable Set of Philologists in this Nation who were excellent Critics, and had a great command of the *Latin Tongue*. *Sir Thomas More*, *Cardinal Pool*, *Linacer*, *Collet*, *Cheek*, *Ascham*, and several more, often to be met with in *Erasmus's* Epistles. Indeed about the beginning of the 16th Century a remarkable turn of Affairs happen'd in this part of the World, which did not a little contribute to advance all sorts of Learning.

Q. What was that?

A. In the Year 1519. *Luther* made a publick defection from the Papal Authority, which, till then, was generally receiv'd without any manner of examination. This change of the Scene obliged both Parties, viz. those of the Reformation, and the Champions for the Church of *Rome*, to prosecute their Studies in the Learned Languages vigorously. The former to justify their Separation, and to prove

that Antiquity was of their side; and the latter, to keep their ground still, and preserve the remainder of their Credit and Interest with the People. When this Theological War was over, men applied themselves to all the other parts of Learning; and in this last Age Mathematical and Physicall Sciences seem to have been the predominant Studies of the Learned men of *Europe*: not but that a Critical Skill in Antiquity was at the same time pursued by several Extraordinary men, as Bishop *Usher*, Mr. *Selden*, Sir *John Marsham*, Mr. *Gataker*, and after them by Dr. *Spencer*, *Isaac Vossius*, *Nic. Heinsius*, *Frederic Gronovius*, *Ezekiel Spanheim*, and *Grævius*, Men even in this part of Learning equal, if not superior to any that cultivated it before them. In short, all manner of Learning seems at present to be better diffused in all parts of *Europe* than ever it was; but whether the Genius's of this and the last Age are comparable to those Immortal Heroes of Antiquity, truly so called, is a Controversy that cannot be conveniently discuss'd in so narrow compass as this Paper will allow.



---

## An Abridgment of the Principal Customs of the *Romans*.

---

### *Concerning their Months.*

Q. **I**Nto how many parts did the *Romans* divide their Months?

A. Into three, the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*.

Q. From whence comes the word *Calends*?

A. From the word *Calo*, to call, because on that day the Pontiff summon'd the People to tell them how many days it was to the *Nones*. The *Calends* were peculiar to the Roman People; whence the Proverb, *ad Calendas Græcas*, i.e. Never.

Q. From whence were the *Nones* so call'd?

A. Because they were the Ninth day before the *Ides*.

Q. And from whence are the *Ides* deriv'd.

A. From the old *Tuscan* word *iduate*, which signifies to divide, because they divide the Month into two almost equal parts.

Q. When began the *Calends*?

A. On the first day of the Month.

Q. When began the *Nones*?

A. On the seventh day of the following  
N 4 Months,

Months, viz. *March, May, July, and October*, all which have one and twenty days.

Q. When did the *Ides* begin ?

A. On the fifteenth of the above-mention'd Months.

Q. And in the other Months when came the *Nones* and the *Ides* ?

A. The *Nones* on the fifth, and the *Ides* on the thirteenth.

Q. Thus the first day was reckon'd the *Calends*, as *Calendæ Januariæ* is the first of *January* ?

A. Right ; and the second day , if the Month had its *Nones* on the seventh day, was call'd the sixth before the *Nones* ; and if on the fifth, the fourth day before the *Nones* ; But the next day immediately following the *Nones* , is in every Month alike call'd the eighth before the *Ides*.

Q. How many *Nones* have the Months of *May, July, October, and March* ?

A. They have all fix ; the rest have only four ; but all the Months in general have eight *Ides*.

Q. And after the *Ides* are over, how do you reckon then ?

A. By the *Calends*, which are told backward, and named from the following Month.

Q. Pray give me an Instance ?

A. As the 18<sup>th</sup>. of the *Calends* of *May* is the 14<sup>th</sup>. of *April*.

Q. Cannot you give me some artificial Verses to fix these Rules in my memory ?

A. Yes,

A. Yes, they are as follows ;

*Sex Muius Nonas, October, Julius, & Mars,  
Quatuor at reliqui; tenet Idus quilibet Ofo.  
Inde dies reliquos omnes dic esse Calendas.*

### *Of the Roman Year, and distinction of Days.*

Q. INTO how many Months did *Romulus* divide his Year ?

A. Into Ten, and it consisted of 304 days: But after him *Numa* added two Months, viz. *January* and *February*, and made his Year to contain Three hundred fifty four days; but this Computation falling out too short for the space of a regular Year by Ten Days and six hours yearly; it occasion'd every eighth year an interposition of three whole Months, which they call'd Leap year.

Q. What alterations did *Julius Caesar* make in the *Roman Calendar* ?

A. He added the old Ten days to *Numa Pompilius's* Year; and lest the odd six hours should breed any confusion, he order'd that every fourth year one whole day should be inserted next after the 23<sup>d</sup>. of *February*.

Q. When did the old *Romans* begin their Year ?

A. At *March*; for which reason those two Months which in honour of *Julius* and *Augustus Caesar* have been since called *Julius* and

*Augustus*, were by them called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*, as being their fifth and sixth Months.

Q. What were their *Dies Atri* and *Postriduani* ?

A. Unfortunate and unlucky days. They were called *Atri*, because they were marked in their Kalendars with black, as on the contrary their *Dies Albi*, or lucky days, were mark'd with white Characters. This Custom they borrow'd from the *Scythians*.

Q. Why had they the name of *Postriduani* ?

A. Because the *Romans* were of opinion, that *dies postridie Calendas, Nonas, & Idus*, i. e. the next day after the *Calends, Nones, or Ides*, of every Month was unfortunate.

Q. What other distinction of days did they observe ?

A. They had their *dies festi*, or *feriæ*, Holidays, because they did on such days *ferire victimas*, that is, offer up sacrifice ; then their working-days, called *profesti, quasi procul a festis* ; and their half-holidays, which *ab intercidendo* they call'd *dies intercisi*, days as it were cut asunder ; one part of them being allow'd to all manner of Business, and the other wholly to Religious Offices.

Q. Are these all ?

A. No, we find another distinction of Days in the *Roman* Kalendar ; for some were *Fasti*, whole Court-days, others *ex parte Fasti*, half Court-days ; and lastly, *Nefasti*, non-leet days, tho indeed the word *Nefastus* does often signify unlucky.

Q. From

Q. From whence are these Names derived ?

A. *A Fando* from speaking, because upon those days which were *Fasti*, the Prætor might lawfully keep Court and administer Justice, which was not done without speaking these three words, *Do, Dico, Addico*.

Q. What is the meaning of those three words ?

A. A Judge is said, *dare*, when he grants out an Action or Writ against a man; *dicere*, when he passes Judgment on him; and *ad-dicere*, when in the Court he sees and allows the delivery of the thing or person on which Judgment is passed.

Q. When did the Romans begin their day ?

A. Their day begun at our Six in the morning; so that their *Hora Prima* was our Seven, *Hora Secunda* our Eight, *Hora Tertia* our Nine a Clock, and so on.

Q. What were the *Nundine* ?

A. Every Month had Three great Markets, which because they were kept every Ninth day, were called *Nundine*.

### *Of the Republic.*

Q. **H**OW many sorts of Slaves were there among the Romans ?

A. Three.

Q. What were the first ?

A. The first were the Children of Slaves, to whom they gave the name of *Verna*.

Q. What

Q. What were the second?

A. Slaves by a Civil right, viz. such as were sold.

Q. And the third, what were they?

A. Slaves by the Law of Nations, those that were taken in Battel, or publickly bought at an Auction.

Q. How many sorts of Free-men were there among the *Romans*?

A. Three sorts likewise: In the first place those that were born free, and of Parents which had been always free, and these they call'd *Ingenui*: Secondly, the Children of those that had been made free, who were call'd *Libertini*: Thirdly, those who of Slaves were set at liberty by their Masters, and these last were call'd *Liberti*.

Q. How many ways were there of obtaining the Freedom of the City of *Rome*?

A. Three. 1. By Birth, both, or at least one of the Parents being free, and these were called *Cives Originarii*. 2. By Gift, when the Freedom was bestowed on any Stranger or Nation, and these were called *Civitate Donati*. 3. By Manumission.

Q. After what manner was that perform'd?

A. The Servant was brought before the Consul or Prætor by his Master, who laying his hand upon his head, cry'd, *Hunc liberum esse volo*, and with that turn'd him round, gave him a Cuff on the Ear, and was said, *mittere servum è manu*. Then the Prætor laid a certain Rod call'd *Vindicta* upon his head, and

and answer'd, *Dico eum esse liberum more Quiritum* : At that time he received a Cap as a token of Liberty; whence *ad pileum vocare aliquem*, is to set one free.

Q. Into how many Orders did *Romulus* divide the City of *Rome* ?

A. Into two; viz. the *Patricians* or Nobles, and the *Plebeians* or People. Afterwards a third Order, namely, that of the Knights or *Equites*, was added.

Q. What Privileges did the *Patricians* at that time enjoy ?

A. They had a Right to aspire to all the Dignities and Offices of the State; but in succeeding times the *Plebeians* were not excluded from them, except some few, which were never executed but by *Patricians*.

### *Of their Army.*

Q. OF how many several parts was the *Roman* Army compos'd ?

A. Of three parts: The first were the *Roman* Legions, wherein none but the *Roman* Citizens served. The second consisted of the Allies, that is to say, the People of *Italy*. And the third was made up of Auxiliary Troops sent by Foreigners.

Q. How were the Allies paid ?

A. They served *gratis*, and had nothing but a certain quantity of Corn given them: As for the Auxiliary Troops, they were daily paid, but they did not take the Military Oath, as the Allies did.

Q. What

Q. What did a Legion comprehend ?

A. A certain number of Horse and Foot.

Q. Into how many Companies were the Infantry and Cavalry divided ?

A. Into Ten ; in every Company of Foot there were three Bands of Soldiers, and in every Band two Centuries.

Q. Into how many Centuries were the Troops of Horse divided ?

A. Each into three Centuries, and so there was consequently sixty Centuries, and thirty Decuries in every Legion.

Q. Who commanded the Infantry ?

A. Six Tribunes, with sixty Centurions, one to each Century.

Q. By whom were the Decuries commanded ?

A. By thirty Decurions, and by one Officer to whom they gave the name of Præfect, and this Præfect was at the head of a whole entire Wing.

Q. How many men had they in each Company of Foot ?

A. Sometimes four hundred and twenty, and sometimes they amounted to six hundred men.

Q. How many men were there in each *Turma*, or Troop of Horse ?

A. No more than thirty, ten in each Decury, but in the Wing three or four hundred.

Q. From whence did the *Roman* Legions take their name ?

A. From their Rank ; thus, for instance, those



those that were of the first, call'd themselves Soldiers of the first, and those that were of the second, call'd themselves Soldiers of the second Legion.

Q. What Authority had the first more than the second Legion?

A. It was superior to all the rest as well for Quality as Number, because it was commanded by the most experienc'd Officers.

Q. Had they not another very considerable Body besides this?

A. Right ; and that was the *Prætorian* Regiment, which always follow'd the Commander in chief, who as he rais'd this Company, so he often pickt out the best men he could find in the other Troops, or at least his best Friends, to compose it. *Augustus* had Nine of these Troops of Guards ; but they became afterwards so unruly, that instead of guarding the Emperors, they frequently displaced and killed them.

Q. How many Legions had the *Romans* in the time of the Consuls?

A. At first there were only four, that were equally divided between the two Consuls ; afterwards the Allies were oblig'd to furnish them with four more.

Q. Did not the number of them rise considerably higher in following Ages?

A. Yes, for in the second *Punic* War the *Romans* had in *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *Spain*, Twenty five Legions ; but in the Civil War between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, they amounted to  
forty ;

forty ; and at the Siege of *Mutina*, the Army of *Anthony*, and that of the Consuls, was compos'd of Fifty Legions

Q How were the Allies ranked ?

A. They were disposed after such a manner, that they cover'd the two sides of the *Roman* Legions, which made these Troops be call'd *Ale*, or Wings ; their Commanders not calling themselves Tribunes, but Præfects.

Q. What difference did they make between a Wing, and a *Cornu* ?

A. They indifferently used the latter, when they spoke of the *Roman* Legions and their Allies ; whereas they seldom made use of the former when they spoke of Legions, but almost always when they spoke of the Troops of Horse furnished by the Allies.

Q. What was a *Wing* at that time when the Republic flourish'd ?

A. Nothing but the Horse of the Allies ; but under the Emperors they gave this name to the Auxiliary Troops.

### *Of the Soldiers.*

Q HOW many sorts of Soldiers had the *Romans* in their Infantry ?

A. There were four sorts of them.

Q. What was the first ?

A. Those that were light arm'd, and consequently fittest for all sorts of nimble Service. These were generally young Fellows.

Q. Who

Q. Who were they that compos'd the second?

A. The *Hastati* or Pike-men, who were somewhat more advanc'd in age.

Q. What was the third?

A. Those that for their Age and Valour were called *Principes*; they carried a Buckler, and used Hangers and were all in the strength and vigor of their Age.

Q. What was the fourth?

A. They were the *Triarii*, old experienc'd Soldiers, that fought in the third rank. They used Bucklers, Hangers, and the *Pilum*.

Q. How many Bands were there in every Cohors?

A. Three, as I have already told you. The first consisting of Pikemen, the second of the *Principes*, the third of the *Triarii*, who were always Six hundred; but the others were sometimes more and sometimes less.

Q. What particular Commander belonged to these light-arm'd Soldiers?

A. They had none, but were equally divided among the three other bodies.

Q. Had they not several names?

A. At first they were call'd *Ferentarii*, *Lorarii*, and *Accensi*, because they filled up what was wanting in the Legions. Afterwards the name of *Velites* was given them; and lastly, that of *Antesignani*, of *Veloces*, of Archers and Slingers, all which names are derived either from their Arms or their rank; and as they were not over-charged with Arms, they

they generally began the fight by casting of Darts, Stones or Arrows.

*Q.* Who were the *Evocati* ?

*A.* They were certain old Soldiers, who after they had serv'd their time, were desir'd by the Generals of the Army to make another Campaign. These had great Privileges conferr'd upon them.

### *Of the Commanders.*

*Q.* **H**OW many sorts of Commanders were there ?

*A.* Three sorts. First, the Centurions and Tribunes commanded the Foot. Secondly, the Decurions and the *Præfects* the Horse. Thirdly, the Lieutenants and the General commanded both one and the other.

*Q.* What were the Priviledges of the first Cohors ?

*A.* That he who was Centurion of the Pikes call'd himself the first Pike ; he of the *Principes* the first Prince, and he of the *Triarii* the *Primipilus*. It belonged to this last to keep the *Roman* Eagle, to fix it in the ground, or carry it ; which we understand by the ninth and tenth *Primipilus*.

*Q.* How many Cohorts were there in each Legion ?

*A.* There were ten in each Legion, and in every Cohors six Centurions.

*Q* From

Q. From whence did these Centurions derive their names ?

A. From the Cohors where they served. Those for instance that were of the tenth, or the eighth, call'd themselves the tenth or eighth.

Q. But he that commanded the Triarians in the tenth Legion, how was he call'd ?

A. He was call'd *Decimus Pilus* ; he that commanded the *Principes*, *Decimus Princeps* ; and so of the rest.

Q. What reward was given to a Soldier after some glorious Exploit ?

A. From the second Centurion of Pikes in the tenth Cohors they made him the first, that is to say, the tenth Pike, afterwards tenth *Princeps*, &c. and this in the same Cohors.

Q. How did they recompence him afterwards according to his merit ?

A. He was made first Officer of the Ninth Cohors, then of the Eighth, and so on till he came to the First, or perhaps to a Tribune's place, if Fortune favoured him.

Q. What did the Tribunes command ?

A. They commanded the Legion, the Centurions, the Cohorts and Companies of Foot.

Q. What did the Præfects command ?

A. They commanded a Wing of Horse, and the Decuries the other Companies and Decuries.

Q. How many men were there in a Wing ?

A. There

A. There were thirty in these Companies, and ten in every Decury.

Q. Who chose the *Legati*, or Lieutenants to the Generals?

A. The Senate nominated them, or else the Generals chose them themselves to the number of three, or four, or more.

Q. What power had they?

A. They had power to judge private Causes, and commanded the Army in the General's absence.

Q. Did not *Augustus* establish two sorts of them?

A. Yes, he made Consular ones, who were to look after the whole Army; and the *Prætorians*, who took care of every Legion.

Q. To whom did they give the name of *Imperator* besides the *Cæsars*?

A. To those that by a Commission from the State had the managing of an Army, being the same that a *Prætor* was in Ancient Times.

Q. Who had it besides?

A. Those that after they had gained some remarkable Victory, wherein at least a thousand of the Enemy were slain, received this Title first from their Soldiers, and afterwards from the Senate; and then public Supplications were granted them to thank the Gods, and sometimes a Triumph.

Q. What were their Colours?

A. An Eagle, a Wolf, a Minotaur, a Horse, and a Boar.

Q. What

Q. What was this Eagle made of?

A. It was a golden Eagle fixt upon a Pike, and was only the Ensign of the *Roman* Legions, so that they counted their Legions by Eagles. It was first of all born by *Marius*.

Q. What did the *Romans* use for an Ensign in *Romulus's* time?

A. They took an handful of Hay, and percht it on the top of a Pole; but this was afterwards chang'd into a Pike, on the top of which they placed a small piece of Wood.

Q. After what manner was it cut?

A. In the form of a Cross, and from it several small Circles and little Bucklers hung down Cross wise, and above it was elevated a Hand.

Q. What was painted upon these Circles?

A. The Representations of their Gods and Emperors. Their Javelins likewise served for Ensigns. To these the Emperors added an Elephant, a Sphinx, and a Dragon.

Q. To whom did these Standards belong?

A. To the Horse; these Colours were foursquare, and fasten'd to a Pike curiously adorned with embroider'd Flames, in Gold, and in Purple; and sometimes the Names of the Emperors were artificially wrought in them.

*After*

*After what manner they disposed their Army for a Battel.*

Q Into how many Battalions did the *Romans* divide their Army?

A. Into two or three Battalions; into two when they made two Wings, one upon the Right, the other upon the Left.

Q. And when into three?

A. When between the two Wings they placed a third Battalion, and this happen'd when they had no more than two Legions, or sometimes more.

Q. Where were the *Romans* placed?

A. They stood in the middle, and the Allies in the two Wings. I have here given you a description of an Army drawn out after their manner, which I borrowed out of *Titus Livius*.

Q. How many Legions were drawn out in this Army describ'd by *Livy*?

A. Four, two consisting of *Romans*, and two of their Allies.

Q. Where were the two *Romans* placed?

A. They were placed in the midst, the Elder of the two on the right, and the other on the left, and the two Allies in the two Wings.

Q. When their Horse were drawn out into Squadrons, where did they stand?

A. They were placed in such a manner on the sides, that that of the *Romans* cover'd the  
the



the Right Wing, and that of the Allies the Left.

*Q.* How many Ranks had they in every Legion ?

*A.* Three. The first was of Pikemen, the second of the *Principes*, the third of the *Triarii*. In the front were to be seen all the ten Companies of Pikes belonging to every Legion, and consequently the Van was composed of forty Companies.

*Q.* Where did the *Evocati* stand ?

*A.* They were either with the General, or in the middle of the Ranks to encourage the rest.

*Q.* And where were the Centurions ?

*A.* They were thus distributed : Two commanded the middle Battalion ; and the other two commanded one the Right Wing, and the other the Left Wing.

*Q.* Where was the General's place ?

*A.* It was between the *Triarii*, and the *Principes*. He was surrounded by the *Prætorian* Bands, and from thence commanded the whole Army.

*Q.* How were the Companies disposed ?

*A.* They were so disposed in a Quadrangular form, that the Legion was likewise foursquare. They fought just as they were ranked.

*Of*

*Of the Honours that were bestowed on  
the Conquerors.*

Q. **W**hen a General had gain'd a considerable Victory, and the Soldiers had saluted him by the name of *Imperator*, what did he next do?

A. He immediately dispatched Letters crown'd with Lawrel to the Senate to demand of them, that they would give him the name of *Imperator*, as likewise that they would *decernere Supplicationes*, that is, appoint publick Supplications or Prayers.

Q. What did the Senate when they had agreed to this Proposal?

A. They all went in a Body to the Temples to thank the gods, and offer'd Sacrifices to them.

Q. What did they afterwards do?

A. They gave Publick Entertainments; and the Publick Rejoycings continued more, or less, according to the Circumstances of the Victory, and the quality of the Conqueror.

Q. Why was a lesser Triumph called *Ovatio*?

A. As well from the joyful Acclamations of the Soldiers, who often redoubled this letter O, as because that in this lesser Triumph Sheep were offer'd, as they offer'd Oxen in the greater.

Q. Who might pretend to this Triumph?

A. He

A. He that was neither Dictator nor Consul, and he that had not vanquish'd a lawful Enemy.

Q. What honours did they pay him?

A. He was crown'd with Mirtle, and so made his Entry into the City, preceded by several men playing upon Flutes. Learned men are not agreed whether he rid on Horseback or no.

Q. How was the solemnity of a Triumph order'd?

A. First marched the Flutes and Trumpets, next the Oxen that were design'd for Sacrifice adorned with Garlands and Ribbons; after them were to be seen the Spoils taken from the Enemy, the several Titles and Representations of Nations and Cities.

Q. Who follow'd after this?

A. The conquer'd Leaders, Princes and Kings bound and fetter'd.

Q. And where did the *Imperator*, or Lord General appear?

A. He was mounted upon a Chariot in a Triumphal Robe, crown'd with Lawrel, and held a branch in his hand.

Q. How was this Chariot drawn?

A. Sometimes by Stags, sometimes by Lions or Elephants, but for the general part it was drawn by four white Horses.

Q. Who follow'd the Chariot?

A. The Children, the Relations, and Friends of the Conqueror. The victorious  
O Army

Army marched afterwards, the Cavalry and Infantry each in their proper rank.

Q. After what manner did they march?

A. They were all crown'd with Lawrel, and sung certain Verses suitable to the Occasion, and carried about them the marks of their Valour, some Bracelets, others Spears, or Chains about their Necks, the greatest part Crowns.

Q. Whither did the Conqueror go in this Procession?

A. He went to the Capitol where he offer'd Sacrifice, after which the Senate made a magnificent Feast at the publick Expence.

Q. What sort of a place was the Capitol?

A. It was a Temple dedicated to *Jupiter* upon the *Tarpeian Hill*. *Domitian* laid out Three Millions to guild it.

Q. What was peculiar to this Temple?

A. There were three Altars in it; one dedicated to *Juno*, another to *Minerva*, that in the middle, which was the most magnificent, to *Jupiter*.

*Of the Southsayers or Augurs.*

Q. What was the proper business of the Augurs?

A. Their Office was to explain Dreams, Extraordinary Events and Oracles, which they did by the singing or flight of Birds, or by observing how they fed.

Q. Whence is their name derived?

A. They

*A.* They were call'd *Augures ab avium garritu*, from the chirping and singing of Birds, and *Auspices quasi Avispices ab aves aspiciendo*, from beholding the flight of Birds. These two kinds of Soothsaying have occasion'd these and the like Sayings, *bonis avibus* or *auspiciis* with good luck, *malis avibus* with ill luck. And because they began nothing *in auspicato*, i. e. without the Counsel of the Augurs, hence *auspicari rem* has signified to begin a matter.

*Q.* From how many sorts of things did they draw their Auguries?

*A.* From five. First from Thunder and Lightning in the Heavens.

*Q.* What was the second?

*A.* By the singing of some Birds, as of a Raven, a Crow, an Owl, and these they call'd *Oscines*; or by the flight of others, as Eagles, Vulturs, Buzzards, which were called *Præpetes*.

*Q.* And how was the third?

*A.* By Chickens: Early in the morning they gave them something to eat, now if they did not immediately pick it up with great greediness, so that some of the Crums fell out of their mouths, if they walked from one side to the other, if they crow'd, or if they flew away, it was looked upon to be an ill Augury; If the contrary happen'd, they drew a happy presage from it. From these Pullets the Augur was call'd *Pullarius*.

Q. What was the fourth ?

A. It was taken from four-footed Beasts, as Wolves, Foxes, Goats, Affes, Weasils, Rats, &c. which either should cross the way, or appear in some unusual place.

Q. How was the fifth ?

A. From any extraordinary Accident either within doors, or in the Fields. As for instance, suppose a man had seen a Weasil, or if Rats had eaten Honey, if one had heard a strange voice, &c. all this they call'd *Dire*.

Q. What did the Soothsayers do with the Victims ?

A. First, they considered the different manner they follow'd those that led them to the Altar, if they did it easily or with difficulty, the lesser or greater quantity of Blood that came from them.

Q. What other Observations did they make ?

A. They observ'd the good or bad disposition of the heart and liver. Lastly, from the brightness or gloominess of the flame, they drew either a good or a bad Augury. Those that observ'd the Fire and Smoke were by a peculiar name call'd *Capnomantes* from the *Greek*, which is as much as to say, Smoke Prophets.

*Of the Roman Apparel.*

Q. HOW were the *Romans* cloathed ?

A. They wore over their *Tunic* a woollen Robe. The *Gracians* had their Mantle called *Palium*, which was as peculiar to them as the *Toga* to the *Romans*.

Q. What sort of a Robe was it ?

A. The figure of it was generally in a demi-circle, and sometimes foursquare.

Q. Were there any plaits or folds in this Gown ?

A. There were two, so placed that one was above the other ; the uppermost came sloping cross from the right to the left, after the manner of a Belt, and the lower came from the waist of the Gown to the bottom.

Q. Who wore their Gowns edged ?

A. The Magistrates and Priests, but especially Children, who till they were seventeen years old wore it with another mark of their Nobility in the form of a golden Heart, which was fasten'd to the Collar.

Q. And when they were seventeen years old, what Robe did they wear then ?

A. They took the *Toga virilis* which was wholly plain. Nay, young Gentlewomen wore the same Habit till they were married, the Edges of which were covered with Purple.

Q. What did they wear under this Gown ?

*A.* One or two Tunics or Coats, that which was next the Skin was call'd the *Subucula*, and the other kept the name of *Tunica*.

*Q.* What sort of a fashion'd Coat was it that the People wore?

*A.* It was without Studds. The Knights wore one with small Studds, and the Senators theirs with large ones.

*Q.* How were these Studds made?

*A.* They were nothing but knots of Purple in the form of broad Nail-heads, sow'd or embroider'd upon the Stuff.

*Q.* Who wore the Robe which they call'd the *Pal'mata*?

*A.* Those that triumph'd. This Robe derived its name from Palms which were painted upon it. All the different Habits which we have no English Names to express them by, were different Military Vestments which they wore over their Tunic.

*Q.* Those Sumptuous Cloaks call'd the *Paludamentum* and *Chlamys*, how were they made?

*A.* They were made of Scarlet, Purple and Gold, and serv'd to defend them from the cold.

*Q.* How many sorts of Shoes had they?

*A.* Two, one which only cover'd the Sole of the Foot, the other which cover'd it wholly.



*The Roman Games.*

Q. **H**OW many sorts of Games were there among the *Romans* ?

A. Several sorts.

Q. Where were they kept ?

A. Some in the *Circus*, or on the Theatre, and took their names from thence ; others were sacred, and celebrated in Honour of the Gods.

Q. How were these sacred Sports call'd ?

A. They were generally named from the Deity in whose Honour they were kept. Others were made upon the account of some Vow. Funeral Sports were only kept at the death of some person, and others for mere exercise.

Q. How many sorts of Sports were represented in the *Circus* ?

A. Seven sorts. First, they either fought at Whorle-bats, or at Fisticuffs, or Cudgels, or Swords, or Javelins, or Pikes, &c. Or else they were Gladiators, or men fighting with beasts, or lastly, they wrestled with one another, to see who could give the first fall.

The second was Running.

The third was Leaping, and that either on a level place, or else from a low place to a high one, or from a high one to a low one.

The fourth was shooting.

The fifth was Fighting on Horseback.

The sixth was driving Chariots drawn by three or four Horses.

The seventh was a *Naumachia*, or Sea-fight, representing in fresh water the manner of a Naval Engagement.

Q. After what manner were the Amphitheatres built?

A. They were built in a Circular or Oval Form, the middle part was call'd the *Cavea*, or *Arena*.

Q. Why was it call'd so?

A. Because it was covered with Sand.

The Games called the *Megalenses*, were celebrated in honour of *Cibele* the Mother of the gods.

Those kept in honour of *Ceres*, as also those kept in honour of *Mars*, *Flora*, and *Apollo*, took their name from these Divinities.

The *Capitoline Games* were celebrated in memory of the preservation of the *Capitol*.

The *Roman Games*, which were likewise for distinction call'd the Great Games, were kept in honour of the three Deities *Jupiter*, *Minerva*, and *Juno*.

The *Plebeian Games* were instituted after the return of the people to *Rome*.

The *Compitalitij* were kept in the cross-ways and open Streets.

The *Secular Games* were so named, not because they were celebrated but once in an Age, but because they were very seldom exhibited.

Young Gentlemen were only concern'd in these last, and he that presid'd in them was call'd the *Princeps Juventutis*, or Prince of the Youth.

*Of their Funeral Rites.*

Q. **W**Hat Customs did the *Romans* observe, when they perceiv'd a body dying?

A. The next of the Kin receiv'd his last gasp of breath into his mouth, to show how unwilling he was to part with him, and as soon as he was dead clos'd his eyes.

Q. What was the first thing they did when a person was dead?

A. He was washed, anointed, and embalmed. If he was a Man of Quality, they put him on a Garment peculiar to his degree, then placed his Corps in a Bed near the Gate, and on the eighth day carried him to the *Pyra* or Funeral Pile. During these seven days his Friends met together, and made great Outcries about his Body, hoping to awake him if he were not perfectly dead. This was call'd *Conclamatio*; whence we proverbially cry *Conclamatum est*, when we give a thing for lost.

Q. Who carried his Body?

A. The greatest men of Note in the Republic carried him in a Bed all covered with Purple.

Q. But if he was a man of an indifferent Fortune?

A. He was then carried in a Bier by one of his nearest Relations, to the *Puticuli*, places of Publick Interrment, supposed to be the same with the *Catacombs*; or else by those whose business and Employment it was, who were à *vespertino tempore*, call'd *Vespæ*, or *Vespillones*, because they buried them in the dusk of the evening.

Q. What appear'd at the head of this Funeral Pomp.

A. The Marks of his Nobility, the Trophies of Arms, the Spoils and Standards he had taken in War, lastly, the Bustoes and Statues of his Ancestors either done in Wax, or painted, were carried before him.

Q. What follow'd after this?

A. His Relations, Friends, and Children, with their hair dishevel'd, and in mourning; from following the body à *sequendo*, these Funeral Rites have been call'd *Exequiæ*.

Q. Did not the Women likewise follow?

A. Yes, but bare-headed, and apparel'd in white, besides a great number of *Præficae*, or Female Weepers, who with their studied Lamentations gave an Example to the rest.

Q. If the deceased was a person that had done great Services to the Commonwealth, whither did they carry his body?

A. It was carried to the *Forum*, or Publick Place, where a Funeral Oration was deliver'd in praise of him.

Q. When

Q. When that Harangue was over, whither did they go?

A. They carried him to the place where his body was to be burnt: Here they erected a large Pile or Tabernacle, composed of the Wood of Resinous Trees, garnish'd all about with Branches of Cypress.

Q. What did they do afterwards?

A. After they had cast his Arms and Apparel upon this Pile of Wood, the Body was to be burnt. His Friends were formerly used to cut off one of his fingers, which they buried with a second Solemnity.

Q. After all these Ceremonies, what did they do with his Body?

A. They placed it at last upon the *Pyra*, and the nearest Relation to the deceased Party either in Blood or Friendship, turning his face averse, set it on fire with a Torch.

Q. What did they do about this Pile?

A. Sometimes they shed human blood either of Captives or Gladiators, and sometimes these weeping women slashed their cheeks.

Q. When the Body was burnt, where did they put the Ashes?

A. They washed them in Milk and Wine, then put them into an Urn, after which the Priest thrice sprinkl'd the company with clean water, and the eldest of these *Præfex* cry'd aloud, *Licet*, which is as much as to say, Now you may go.

Q. What

Q. What answer did the flanders-by make?

A. They sigh'd, and said, *Farewell, farewell, we will follow you in our turns, when it shall please Nature.*

Q. Whither were his Bones and Ashes carried?

A. They were carried to a Sepulchre, before which an Altar was built, and upon it they burnt Incense.

Q. After all these last offices were perform'd, what did his Heirs do?

A. They gave a Feast to his Relations, and sometimes to the People, but always prepared a Funeral Supper for the old and aged men, which was called *Silicernium*, and figuratively signifies an old fellow.

Q. Did the Romans use to bury within the City?

A. By a Law of the Twelve Tables it was provided, That none besides the Emperor and Vestal Nuns should be buried within the City; tho some few for particular reasons have obtain'd it. They generally buried them near the Highway, to put Passengers in mind of their Mortality; hence we meet the word *Viator* so frequently in old Inscriptions.

Q. What was the ancient way of burying among the Romans?

A. Interment; but afterwards to prevent the ill treatment of their Enemies, they burnt their Bodies, as the *Græcians* did.

How-

However, 'tis credible the poorer sort were still Interr'd, as being the cheapest way ; and that only persons of Condition used Burning.

*Of their Eating.*

Q. HOW many stated times do you find the *Romans* had for eating?

A. They breakfasted in the Morning ; towards Noon they dined, but always very soberly, because they dined alone ; a little after followed their Beaver, and towards Nine a Clock at Night they went to Supper, which was generally very magnificent, because they invited their Friends to it.

Q. What did they do in the beginning of their Entertainments ?

A. They gave each of the Guests a Billet, wherein was set down the Number, the Quantity, and Order of the Courses.

Q. Upon what did they sit at Supper-time ?

A. They lay upon Beds. They placed no more than three Beds about the Table, and three in a Bed, because they had seldom more Guests than Nine, and they were cover'd with Purple.

Q. What did they use to do before they lay upon these Beds.

A. They washed their Body, changed their Garments, and pull'd off their Shooes for fear of spoiling the Beds.

Q. Into

Q. Into how many Parts did they usually divide their Supper ?

A. Into Three, which they call'd their first, second, and third Course. In the first were always serv'd Eggs, and in the last Course ( whether second or third ) always Apples, whence we say proverbially, *Ab ovo usque ad mala.*

Q. What was the *Sportula* ?

A. A Dole of Meat distributed by Persons of Eminent Quality, to the People, which from the Panier or Basket in which it was brought, was call'd *Sportula*. Sometimes they distributed Money instead of Meat ; so that *Sportula* denoted any kind of Dole either of Meat or Money ; and as often as it was given in lieu of a Supper, it was oppos'd to *Cæna recta*.

Q. What was a *Cæna recta*, or *Cæna dubia* ?

A. Both signify a handsom Entertainment, where there is Plenty and Variety of Dishes. *Recta* here signifies as much as *Vera*, and is oppos'd to *Sportula*, a light and short Supper : 'Tis called *Dubia*, because in so great a variety the Guest does not know where to begin. *Cæna Ambulatoria* is a Supper where one Dish walks through the Table.

### Of their Priests.

Q. What was the Chief-Priest's or *Pontifex Maximus*'s Office ?

A. He looked after all the other Priests, and



and to him it belonged to judge of all matters that had a relation to the Worship of the Gods.

*Q.* Who was the first Emperor that assum'd the Title of *Pontifex Maximus*?

*A.* *Augustus Caesar*; and the succeeding Emperors follow'd his Example, as we find in their Coins and Medals. Nay, the Christian Emperors retain'd the Name, till *Gratian* issued out a Prohibition for any one to give him that Title.

*Q.* Why were *Flamines* so named?

*A.* From the Hat or Mitre they wore, which in ancient times was called *Flama*.

*Q.* By whom was the Temple of *Vesta* instituted?

*A.* Either by *Aeneas*, or *Ascanius*; at least the Vestal Virgins were by *Numa Pompilius*.

*Q.* What Rules did they observe?

*A.* They were obliged to take none into the number of Vestals, as were born either of a Slave or a Freed-man, or were ill-shap'd, or were above Ten, or less than Six Years old. It was an Honourable Order, and they were extremely respected by all people.

*Q.* What was their Office?

*A.* To keep the Sacred Fire; which if by some Misfortune or Neglect it were extinguish'd, they were to kindle it with nothing but the Fire of Heaven: For which purpose they used to contract the Sun-beams in a Burning-Glass.

*Q.* How

Q. How many Years did they continue in the service of this Goddess ?

A. Thirty years ; during the first ten they learnt all the Ceremonies, which they put in practice the ten years next following ; and the last ten they employ'd in instructing the Novices.

Q. After this time was expir'd , what Privilege had they ?

A. They were at liberty to quit their Sacerdotal Habit, and marry.

Q. When the Sacred Fire was suffer'd to go out through Negligence, what Punishment did the Criminal endure ?

A. She was publickly whipt, and if any of them lost their Virginity, they were buried alive.

Q. Where ?

A. Without the Town, in a very dark Vault, where they had a Bed, and a Lamp lighted.

Q. Did they leave them any Food in the Vault ?

A. Lest the Criminal should immediately dye of Hunger, they left a little Bread, Milk, and Oyl.

Q. When the Vestal was shut in, and the door made up, what did they use to do ?

A. That day a profound silence was kept in *Rome*.

*Of the Roman State.*

**Q.** Into how many parts was the *Roman* People divided ?

**A.** Into Three: First, the Senators, which was the most Powerful Body, so that nothing was done without their Advice.

**Q.** Which was the second ?

**A.** That of the Knights, which next to the Senators made the greatest Figure in the Government. In this number the Sons of Senators were reckon'd, till such time as they were of Age to be Senators.

**Q.** Which was the third part ?

**A.** 'Twas the People, by which we are to understand all those that were neither Knights nor Senators.

**Q.** What were the *Roman Comitia* ?

**A.** Assemblies, where they used to give their Votes ; and because they gave them when they were divided sometimes into *Curie* or Wards, and sometimes into Tribes or Centuries, thence arose the different Names of these Assemblies.

**Q.** Had not all these Assemblies their respective Privileges ?

**A.** Yes ; and they were conven'd for some special occasion, as to create Magistrates, to enact some Law, or give their Opinion. The different places where these Laws were made, gave them different Names.

**Q.** Who

*Q.* Who were there in the Assembly of Magistrates?

*A.* Besides Citizens, there were those that stood for Offices, and were called Candidates, because they wore a white garment.

*Q.* Who were there besides these in this Assembly?

*A.* Distributors, in Latin *Diribitores*, who gave the people Wooden Tables as they passed over certain Bridges, and collected their Votes.

*Q.* Were no other persons admitted there?

*A.* There were Guards that took care lest there should be any Cheat in gathering their Votes, and Cryers who proclaim'd aloud who had most Votes.

*Q.* How did they manage Judicial Causes?

*A.* There was the Plaintiff, the Council, and the Defendant, who had his Friends about him, and appear'd in a very ordinary Garb, with a long Beard, his Hair and every thing about him negligent and out of order.

*Q.* How did they give their Suffrages?

*A.* At first they used to give them *viva voce*, but afterwards in all Assemblies for Laws or Judgments, they gave the people Wooden Tables; in one were these two Letters, U. R. that is to say, *Uti Rogas*, Be it as you desire it.

*Q.* What was writ in the other?

*A.* The letter *A*, signifying *Antiquo*; i. e. I forbid it.

*Q.* If

Q. If the number happen'd to be equal, how did they then?

A. The Sentence was void, unless in the case of Criminals, for the Century which did not condemn, was suppos'd to absolve.

Q. How many Assemblies did they keep to elect Magistrates?

A. Two. The first to elect; *Whom wou'd you have*, said he who presided, *for your Consuls or Prætors?* and after the Election was made, *Are you contented that M. Cicero, and M. Anthony, whom the people have pitched upon to be Consuls, should stand.*

Q. What does the word *Forum* signify?

A. 'Twas either the place where they bought and sold, or signified the same with *Curia*, the place where the Assemblies were held.

Q. What is the meaning of the word *Rostra*?

A. It signifies the Tribunal, from whence they harangu'd the People.

Q. Why was it so called?

A. Because it was formerly adorn'd with the Beaks of the Ships which the *Romans* took from the People of *Antium*.

### *Of their Gladiators.*

Q. **A**T whose expence were these Prizes perform'd.

A. Sometimes at the expence of private Persons, who to make themselves popular, exhibited these Shows; and because they were

were freely bestow'd upon the People, to whom by a publick Bill they gave notice what day they should be fought, therefore they are frequently denoted by the *Latin* word *Munus*.

Q. What was the original of these Spectacles?

A. It was derived from a common practise among the Heathens at the burial of their Friends, who were of opinion that the shedding of man's blood wou'd be propitiatory to the Soul deceased, and for this purpose bought Captives and Slaves to be sacrificed upon these Occasions. These particular kind of Fencers were called *Buſtuarii*, but afterwards these Spectacles were play'd not only at Tombs, but in the Circus, and Amphitheatre. Nay, the Humour prevailed so far at last, that they were given as Legacies by Will and Testament to the People.

Q. When they met on the day appointed, what Weapons did they fight with?

A. They were of two sorts. *Lusoria tela*, with which they only show'd Feats of Activity; and *Decretoria*, with which they really encounter'd one another for life or death. Their skirmishing with the former was properly term'd *præludium*.

Q. When a Gladiator receiv'd a dangerous wound, what became of him?

A. He was not immediately discharged, for this depended upon the pleasure of the Emperor, or the People, or the Person that gave

gave the Show. If they thought fit to make him continue the Fight, though in never so great extremity, they signified it *convertendo pollicem*, by turning up the Thumb, as they did the contrary *premendo pollicem*, by turning down the Thumb. His discharge was called *Missio*.

Q. What reward did the Conquerors receive?

A. Sometimes Money, sometimes a Garland of Palm-tree, whence figuratively *Palm* has been used to signify the Victory itself; sometimes the People gave them a Wand call'd *Rudis*, and somes a Cap or *Pileus*, both which last were Badges or Tokens of Liberty, and of their being wholly discharged from this slavish sort of life.

### *Of the Sibylline Oracles among the Romans.*

Q. HOW many Sibylls were there?

A. They are generally reckon'd to be Ten. The first was called *Perfica*, the second *Lybica*, the third *Delphica*, the fourth *Cumæa*, the fifth *Erythræa*, the sixth *Samia*, the seventh *Cumana*, the eighth *Hellepontica*, the ninth *Phrygia*, and the tenth *Tiburtina*. They were all of them Women very famous for the Spirit of Prophecy.

Q. Where were their Books kept?

A. Within the Capitol under ground in a Chest of Stone, where they continued safe till

till the burning of the Capitol in *Sylla's* time. But to retrieve this loss, the Senate dispatched Envoys into *Greece* and *Asia* to collect all the Prophecies which went under their name. They were supposed to be of that certainty, that when they affirm'd any thing to be undoubtedly true, they used to say it was *Sibyllæ folium*, as true as *Sibyll's* Oracle.

*Q.* Did not *Tarquinius Priscus* institute a certain number of Priests to expound and keep their Oracles ?

*A.* Yes, who were at first from their number call'd *Duumviri*, afterwards they were increased to ten, and call'd *Decemviri*; and lastly, *Sylla*, as 'tis suppos'd, added five more, and then they were call'd the *Quindecimviri*. These Oracles were constantly consulted in all times of public Calamity and Exigence, and to the above-mention'd Priests it belonged to see that Sacrifices, Supplications, Processions, Expiations, and in short, all Ceremonial Rites prescribed by these Books were duly perform'd.

*Q.* Which of the *Sibylls* was it that writ her Oracles upon Leaves of Trees ?

*A.* The *Sibylla Cumæa*, and as these Leaves were frequently scatter'd by the winds, it was a difficult matter to place them in due order again. Hence arose the Proverb, *Laboriosius est quam Sibyllæ folia colligere*.

*Q.* Is *Sibylla* a proper name ?

*A.* No ; 'tis an appellation common to all Women that have the gift of Prophecy, from



*oids*, which in the *Æolic Dial.* is the same with *Seis* God, and *βουλή*, i. e. Counsel; because they reveal'd the will and pleasure of the Gods to the people.

*Of their Sacrifices.*

Q. **W**Hat was the manner of Sacrificing?

A. First, the Priest laid his hand on the Altar, and rehearsed certain Prayers to *Janus*, and *Vesta*.

Q. Why so?

A. Because the *Romans* were persuaded, that without their intercession they could not have access to the other gods. His Prayers being ended, he laid upon the Beast's head a little Corn, together with a Cake made of Meal and Salt, call'd in Latin *Mola*. From this Ceremony the Act of Sacrificing has been termed *Immolatio*.

Q. What did he do after this?

A. He drank some Wine out of a wooden or earthen Chalice, which was afterwards carried about to all the people that they might also *libare* or gently taste of it. This Rite was call'd *Libatio*.

Q. Proceed.

A. When this was over, the rest of the Wine with Frankincense mixt in it, was pour'd upon the Beast's Head between the Horns, ore crying out with a loud voice, *macla est bestia*, i. e. *magis aucta*, and then they

they immediately began to kill the Sacrifice.

Q. After what manner was this done?

A. First, the Priest p'uckt off some of the Hairs between the Horns, and threw them into the fire; then turning his Face towards the East, he drew a long crooked Knife upon the Beast's Back, and commanded his under Officers or *Pope* to kill the Beast.

Q. Were the Standers-by Idle all this while?

A. No, for some saved the Blood in Vessels, others Flead the Beast, and others washed it. Then the Priest observ'd the Entrails, and if he discovered no ill Omens in them, the above-mention'd *Pope* rowl'd them in Barley-meal, and sent them in Baskets to the Priests, who taking them up in a broad Platter, laid them upon the Altar and burnt them. This was properly call'd *litare*.

Q. And how did they conclude?

A. After the portion laid out for the Gods was burnt, the people repair'd to a common Feast, where as they were eating, they sung Hymns, and danced about the Altar.

*Of their Marriages and Divorces.*

Q. **H**OW was the manner of Contracting?

A. For the greater security they writ down the form of the Contract upon Tables of Record, and had them seal'd by some Witnesses there present, who from this Action were termed *Signatores*. But first they consulted the Augurs, as they were used to do in all Actions of any importance.

Q. Why did the Woman wear the Ring, which the Man in token of his Affection gave her, on the fourth Finger of her left Hand?

A. Because they supposed that an Artery from the Heart proceeded to that Finger alone.

Q. Whence is the word *Nuptiæ* derived?

A. From *Nubo*, which signifies to cover, for the custom was that the Woman should be brought to her Husband with a *Flammeum*, or yellow Veil thrown over her Face.

Q. Why was the Bride by a seeming violence taken away from her Mother, or next Relation?

A. Because of the good Success which *Romulus* and his Followers had in the violent taking away of the *Sabine* Women.

Q. What other Ceremonies did they use?

*A.* Towards night the Woman was led to her Husband's House (whence the common Phrase *Uxorem ducere* to marry a Wife) with five Torches, to intimate the need which married Persons had of five Deities, viz. *Jupiter, Juno, Venus, Suadela, and Diana*, who is oftentimes call'd *Lucina*.

*Q.* What were these Torches made of?

*A.* Of a pitchy Liqueur that issued from a Tree call'd *Teda*. Hence the Poets figuratively called both the Torches, and the Wedding it self *Teds*.

*Q.* When the Woman was brought to the door, what did she then?

*A.* She anointed the Posts of the Door with Oil, from which Ceremony a Wife was call'd *Uxor quasi Unxor*. Then the Bride-man lifted her over the Threshold, and so carried her in by a seeming force.

*Q.* Why so?

*A.* Because she cou'd not in modesty seem to go without violence into that place where she was to resign her Virginity.

*Q.* As she was carried in, what was it the Company cried aloud?

*A.* They cried *Talassio, Talassio*, as the Greeks did *Hymen Hymenae*; for which this reason is alledged; That at the Rape of the Sabine Women some of the meaner sort carrying away one of the fairest Women, certain Citizens would have taken her from them, which to prevent they pretended that they carried her to one *Talassius*, a man of great

great esteem, and so brought their Prey off, the others accompanying her, and often crying, *Talaffio, Talaffio*.

Q. What follow'd after this?

A. Being thus brought home, she received the Keys of her Husband's House, to denote that the custody of every thing in it was committed to her care.

Q. How was the Marriage-Bed filed?

A. *Genialis lectus*, and sometimes *lectus adversus*, *quod cum in atrio collocari janua ex adverso mos fuit*, that is, because they placed it in the Court, directly opposite to the Gate.

Q. What Ceremonies did they use the next day after the Marriage?

A. They gave a solemn Entertainment where the Relations and Friends of the married Couple met to make merry. This Feast they called *Repotia*.

Q. How many sorts of Divorces had they?

A. Two: One between Parties only contracted, the second between married People. The first was properly call'd *Repudium*, in which the party suing for a Divorce, used this form *Conditione tuâ non utar*; the other was call'd *Divortium*, and the party that desired it used these words, *Res tuas tibi habeto*, or *res tuas tibi agito*.

Q. What is the reason of this Phrase, *mittere*, or *remittere nuncium*?

A. Because in these Divorces they usually sent their Wives a paper containing the

Causes of their Separation *per nuncium* by a Messenger.

*Q.* What Formalities were used in a Divorce?

*A.* The Ceremonies were quite contrary to those observ'd in Marriage. For after the Censors were made acquainted with the just Causes of the Divorce, the Marriage-Tables were broken, the Dowry restor'd, the Keys of the House taken from the Woman, and she turned out of doors.

*Of other Roman Customs and Antiquities.*

*Q.* **W**hat Ceremonies did the Romans use in the building and razing of Cities?

*A.* In the building of Cities the Founders generally made their Augural Observations; which being ended, they marked out the place where the Wall was to be built, by ploughing up the Ground. Where they design'd the City Gate to be, they gently carried the Plough over it, whence a Gate was call'd *Porta à Portando*. The like Ceremony of Ploughing was used in the demolishing of Cities.

*Q.* What is the difference between *Ara*, and *Altare*?

*A.* The *Ara* was made foursquare, and cover'd with Turf, not very high from the ground, or as some say, close to it, and up-  
on

on this they sacrificed to the Terrestrial Gods. The *Altare* was lifted somewhat higher from the ground, and upon this they sacrificed to the Celestial Gods only.

Q. What was the *Scrobiculus* ?

A. A Furrow or Pit containing an Altar in it, into which they pour'd down the Blood of the Beast slain, together with Milk, Honey, and Wine, when they sacrificed to an Infernal Deity.

Q. What was the *Focus* ?

A. In strict propriety of speech it is taken for an Altar on which they sacrificed to their Domestic Gods, such as were their *Penates*, or *Lares*, whence arose the Proverb, *Pro aris & focus certare*, to fight for the defence of one's Religion and Countrey, which was part of the *Militare Sacramentum*, or Oath administred to the Roman Soldiers.

Q. Who were the *Dii majorum Gentium* ?

A. Gods of the first Rank and Quality, whom *Ennius* has thus compriz'd in a Distick.

*Juno, Vesta, Minerva, Ceres, Diana, Venus, Mars, Mercurius, Jovis, Neptunus, Vulcanus, Apollo.*

They were likewise call'd *Dii consentes quasi consentientes*, because *Jupiter* would do nothing without the consent of all.

Q. How was the second sort of Gods named ?

A. They were call'd *Semidei*, or Demi-gods ;

gods ; also *Indigetes*, i. e. God's adopted, or Canonized, men deified, and *Divi*. This last Title they bestowed upon their Emperors, because for their Merits they thought them worthy to be Gods.

*Q.* What were the *Dii Patrii*, or *Tutulares* ?

*A.* Such as had undertaken the protection of any City or Place ; and therefore the *Romans*, when they besieged any Town, used by certain Charms to call out their Tutelar Gods, because they thought it impossible to take the City as long as they continued in it, or at least suppos'd it a Crime to make the Gods Prisoners.

*Q.* What were the *Genii* ?

*A.* They were looked upon to be of a middle essence between Gods and Men, and every man so soon as he was born, was supposed to be invisibly accompanied by a good and evil Genius or Angel.

*Q.* What were men used to write upon before the invention of Paper ?

*A.* They sometimes writ upon the inward Rinds of Trees, called in Latin *Libri* (whence we still call our Books *Libri*) sometimes in great Leaves of the *Ægyptian* Rush *Papirus*, from whence comes our *English* word Paper, and the *Latin Papirus*. Shortly after a Contest happening between *Ptolomy* King of *Ægypt*, and *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, the latter found out the use of Parchment, and call'd it from the place *Pergamena*. At this time



time the *Romans* used to write in Tables of Wood, covered over with Wax, so that *Tabellæ* is employ'd to signify Missive Letters, and *Tabellarius* a Letter-Carrier. These Tables or Books were made of the *Caudex*, the Trunk or Stock of a Tree, whence we still call our Books *Codices*, à *Caudicibus*.

Q. What did they write with?

A. With a *Stylus*, an Instrument of Steel or Iron, having a sharp point at one end, and being broad, but keen and well-edg'd at the other. With the sharp point they writ what they pleased; with the broad end they scrap'd out what they had written; whence the Phrase, *Stylum invertere*, which signifies, To say and unsay a thing.

Q. What was the name of the Mark which they made at the end of their Books?

A. They call'd it a *Coronis*; which the Interpreters of *Aristophanes* describe to be *linea brevis ab inferiore parte flexa*. All are agreed it was some known and common dash, usually subjoin'd to the end of Books. This gives light to the Greek Proverb, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς μέχρι τῆς κορωνίδος, i. e. from the beginning to the end.

Q. After what manner were their Books written in former Ages?

A. They writ a whole Book in one continued Page, which was not cut into many leaves, and bound up, as the fashion now is, but that one entire Page was used to be roll'd upon a Staff fasten'd at the end of it. Hence

*à velvendo*, we call our Books *Volumina*, Volumes.

Q. What was the *Umbilicus* ?

A. The Staff on which the Book was roll'd, they call'd metaphorically *Umbilicus*, because as a Navel is the middle of a man's body, so when the Book was roll'd up, this Staff was the middle of it. However, because it was always fasten'd at one end of the Page, hence *Umbilicus*, but especially when applied to a Book, signifies *The End*, as in Horace, *ad Umbilicum ducere*.

Q. How were the two knobs or ends of the Staff, which appear'd on each side of the Volume, call'd ?

A. *Cornua*, and they used to adorn them with Silver and Gold. The Title, which was the beginning of every Book, was named *Frons*.

Q. What Customs and Ceremonies were used by the *Romans* in handling their Suits of Law ?

A. First, there was, *in jus vocatio*, that is, the citing of one into the Court. Secondly, *Postulatio*, a Request put up to the Prætor, That it might be lawful for the Plaintiff to enter his Action against the Defendant ; whence *postulare aliquem de hoc vel illo crimine*, is to accuse one of this or that Crime. Thirdly, *nominis delatio*, the taking of the Defendant's Name into the Court-Book, and this was call'd, *intendere actionem vel litem*, and *diem alicui dicere* ; that is, to enter an Action against one.

Q. When

Q. When Request was made by the Plaintiff to the Prætor, That he might enter his Action against the Defendant, did he not *vadari reum*, i. e. demand Sureties or Bail of him to appear on the day appointed ?

A. Yes ; and *promisit vadimonium*, that is, he entred likewise into Bond for his own appearance on the same day, which was commonly the third day following, called properly *dies perendinus*, and sometimes *dies tertius* simply.

Q. Who were the *Viri Consulares* ?

A. Not every one that was capable of a Consul's Office, but those that had actually born it.

Q. How did the Romans date their Deeds and Charters ?

A. At first they did it by naming the Year wherein their City was founded ; as for instance, *ab urbe conditâ* the twentieth, thirtieth, or fortieth year ; but afterwards by subscribing the Name of their present Consuls. Nay, to know the Age of their Wines they sign'd their Vessels after the same manner.

Q. What was their manner of selling *sub coronâ* ?

A. An Enemy was said to be sold *sub coronâ*, when in the Market-Place a Crown was put upon his head in token of such a Sale ; or else because at that time he was surrounded with a Circle of Soldiers called *Corona*.

Q. What was their way of dismissing an Enemy *sub jugum*?

A. They erected two Spears, with a third lying a-cross, in manner of a Gallows; then they caused them, being disarm'd and their Belts taken away, to pass under, in token of Bondage.

Q. Why did *Lapis* in old time signify a Mile?

A. Because at every Mile's end a great stone in manner of a mark-stone, was erected.

Q. Why did the Romans call the space of Five Years a *Lustrum*?

A. Because they did once in Five Years Revolution *lustrare exercitum Romanum*, purge the Roman Army by Sacrifice. Hence we say, *duo lustra*, ten years, *tria lustra*, fifteen years, &c.

Q. Does not *Nomen* sometimes signify the same as *Debitum*, a Debt?

A. Yes, and the reason is, because the Creditors did use to write down their Debtors Names: Hence they were said, *Nomina sua liberare*, when they paid the Debt; as on the contrary, they were said *Nomina facere*, when they contracted a Debt.

# An Explication of some Letters and Names that occur in this History.

<b>A.</b> <i>Aulus.</i>	<i>Ser. Servius.</i>
<i>C. Caius.</i>	<i>Sex. Sextus.</i>
<i>D. Decimus.</i>	<i>F. Filius.</i>
<i>L. Lucius.</i>	<i>N. Nepos.</i>
<i>M. Marcus.</i>	<i>Q. Quatuor.</i>
<i>N. Numerius.</i>	<i>S. P. Q. R. Senatus,</i>
<i>P. Publius.</i>	<i>Populusque Roma-</i>
<i>Q. Quintus.</i>	<i>nus.</i>
<i>T. Titus.</i>	<i>S. C. Senatus Cen-</i>
<i>Ap. Appius.</i>	<i>sulto.</i>
<i>Cn. Cneius.</i>	<i>Cof. Consul.</i>
<i>S. Spurius.</i>	<i>Coff. Consules.</i>
<i>Ti. Tiberius.</i>	<i>HS. Sestertium.</i>
<i>Mam. Mamercus.</i>	

## The Geographical Names explained.

<b>A</b> <i>Llobroges.</i>	The People of <i>Savoy</i> and <i>Piedmont.</i>
<i>Ambrons.</i>	People of <i>France</i> living by <i>Pillage.</i>
<i>Albanians.</i>	People dwelling between the <i>Caspian</i> Sea and the <i>Georgians.</i>
<i>Daci.</i>	The People of <i>Transylvania.</i>
<i>Iberians.</i>	The <i>Georgians.</i>
<i>Insubres.</i>	The <i>Milanese.</i>
<i>Liburnia.</i>	<i>Hodiè Croatia.</i>
<i>Ligurians.</i>	The <i>Genoese.</i>
<i>Marcomanni.</i>	People near <i>Austria</i> , whose <i>Countrey</i> is <i>Marck</i> ; according to others the <i>Bohemians.</i>
<i>Quadi.</i>	The <i>Moravians.</i>
<i>Sarmatia.</i>	A large <i>Countrey</i> , part in <i>Europe</i> , part in <i>Asia</i> , comprehending all <i>Polonia</i> , <i>Russia</i> , <i>Muscovy</i> , and most of <i>Tartary.</i>
<i>Suevi.</i>	The Inhabitants of <i>Schwaben.</i>
<i>Teutones.</i>	The <i>Germans.</i>
<i>Vaccæi.</i>	People of the Kingdom of <i>Leon</i> in <i>Spain.</i>

# A Table of the Principal Matters contain'd in this Book.

<b>T</b> HE Original of the Romans	Page 1
A Chronological Table of the Latin Kings	3
The Building of Rome	4
The means that Romulus us'd to people the City of Rome	5
The several sorts of Government in the City of Rome	6
The Seven Kings of Rome	8
Romulus the 1st King of Rome	9
Numa Pompilius the 2d King of Rome	14
Tullus Hostilius the 3d King of Rome	16
Ancus Martius the 4th King of Rome	19
Tarquinius Priscus the 5th King of Rome	20
Servius Tullius the 6th King of Rome	23
Tarquinius Superbus the 7th King of Rome	27
Of the Alterations made in Rome	31
The Wars in which the Romans were engag'd	33
The War of Hetruria	34
The War of the Latins	36
The War of the Volscians	37
The War of the Veientes	40
The War of the Gauls	42
The War of the Latins	46
The War against the Samnites	47
The War against the Tarentines	49
The first Punic War	53
The second Punic War	58
The	

## The Contents.

<i>The War of Macedonia</i>	69
<i>The War of Antiochus</i>	70
<i>The second Macedonian War</i>	71
<i>The third Punic War</i>	74
<i>The War of Corinth</i>	75
<i>The War of Portugal</i>	76
<i>The destruction of Numantia</i>	77
<i>The War of the Slaves</i>	78
<i>The War against Jugurtha</i>	80
<i>The War against Mithridates</i>	82
<i>The Civil War between Marius and Sylla</i>	85
<i>The taking of Jerusalem</i>	87
<i>The War between Cæsar and Pompey</i>	88
<i>Of the several Seditions</i>	92
<i>A Chronological Table of the Roman Emperors</i>	100
<i>Julius Cæsar the first Roman Emperor</i>	103
<i>Augustus the 2d Emperor</i>	116
<i>Tiberius the 3d Emperor</i>	128
<i>Caligula the 4th Emperor</i>	133
<i>Claudius the 5th Emperor</i>	138
<i>Nero the 6th Emperor</i>	142
<i>Galba the 7th Emperor</i>	148
<i>Otho the 8th Emperor</i>	149
<i>Vitellius the 9th Emperor</i>	151
<i>Vespasian the 10th Emperor</i>	154
<i>Titus the 11th Emperor</i>	158
<i>Domitian the 12th Emperor</i>	161
<i>Nerva the 13th Emperor</i>	165
<i>Trajan the 14th Emperor</i>	167
<i>Adrian the 15th Emperor</i>	173
<i>Antoninus Pius the 16th Emperor</i>	177



## The Contents.

M. Aurelius and L. Verus, making together the 17th Emperor	180
Commodus the 18th Emperor	183
Pertinax the 19th Emperor	185
Julian the 20th Emperor	187
Severus the 21st Emperor	188
Caracalla and Geta, making together the Emperor	22d 191
Macrinus and his Son, making together the Emperor	23d 194
Heliogabalus the 24th Emperor	195
Alexander the 25th Emperor	197
Maximin and his Son, making together the Emperor	26th 200
Balbinus and Pupienus, making together the 27th Emperor.	202
Gordianus the Younger the 28th Emperor	203
Philip and his Son, making together the Emperor	29th 205
Decius the 30th Emperor	206
Gallus and Volusianus his Son, making together the 31st Emperor	207
Æmilianus the 32d Emperor	208
Valerianus the 33d Emperor	209
Gallienus the 34th Emperor	211
Claudius II. the 35th Emperor	213
Quintillus the 36th Emperor	215
Aurelianus the 37th Emperor	ibid.
Tacitus the 38th Emperor	217
Florianus the 39th Emperor	218
Probus the 40th Emperor	219
Carus the 41st Emperor	221
Numerianus the 42d Emperor	222
Carinus	

## The Contents.

Carinus the 43 <sup>d</sup> Emperor .	223
Diocletian and Maximian, making together the 44 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	224
Galerius and Constantius, making together the 45 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	227
Constantine the Great the 46 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	230
The Division of the Empire between the three Sons of Constantine the Great, making toge- ther the 47 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	236
Julian the Apostate the 48 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	239
Jovian the 49 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	242
Valentinian the Great the 50 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	244
Valens the 51 <sup>st</sup> Emperor	245
Gratian the 52 <sup>d</sup> Emperor	247
Theodosius the Great the 53 <sup>d</sup> Emperor	248
Arcadius the 54 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	253
Honorius the 55 <sup>th</sup> Emperor	254
Of the Fall and Decay of the Roman Empire	257
Of the increase, purity and decay of the Roman Eloquence and Learning	263
An Abridgment of the Principal Customs of the Romans	271
Of their Months	<i>ibid.</i>
Of their Year, and the distinction of their days	273
Of the Republic	275
Of the Army	277
Of the Soldiers	280
Of the Leaders	282
After what manner they ranked their Army for Battel	286
Of the Honours paid to the Conquerors	288
Of	

## The Contents.

<i>Of the Augurs</i>	290
<i>Of the manner of the Roman Apparel</i>	293
<i>Of their Games</i>	295
<i>Of their Funerals</i>	297
<i>Of their Eating</i>	301
<i>Of their Priests</i>	302
<i>Of the Roman States</i>	305
<i>Of their Gladiators</i>	307
<i>Of the Sibylline Oracles among the Romans</i>	309
<i>Of their Sacrifices</i>	311
<i>Of their Marriages</i>	313
<i>Of several other Roman Antiquities and Customs</i>	316

T H E E N D

---



---

---

*Books Sold by Richard Baldwin.*

**T**HE Works of *F. Rabelais*, M. D. In Five Books ; or the Lives, Heroick Deeds and Sayings of the Good *Gargantua* and *Pantagruel*, and his Voyage to the Oracle of the Bottle. As also his Historical Letters. To which is added, the Author's Life, and Explanatory Remarks. By Mr. *Motteux*. Never before Printed in *English*.

*Bibliotheca Politica* : Or an Enquiry into the Ancient Constitution of the *English* Government ; with Respect both to the just Extent of Regal Power, and to the Rights and Liberties of the Subject. Wherein all the chief Arguments, as well against as for the Late Revolution, are Impartially represented and considered. In XIII. Dialogues. Collected out of the best Authors both Ancient and Modern. To which is added, An Alphabetical Index to the whole Work.

The Four Epistles of *A. G. Busbequius*, concerning his Embassy into *Turky*. Being Remarks upon the Religion, Customs, Riches, Strength and Government of that People. As also a Description of their Chief Cities, and Places of Trade and Commerce. To which is added, His Advice how to manage War against the *Turks*. Done into *English*.

The Bounds set to *France* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty ; and the Interest of the *Confederates* not to accept of the Offers of Peace made at this Time by the *French* King. To which are added some short Reflections, shewing how far *England* is concern'd in the Restitution of that Treaty. Together with a List of the Towns and Countries that the *French* have taken since that time.

## *Books sold by R. Baldwin.*

Letters of State, Written by Mr. *John Milton*, To most of the Sovereign Princes and Republicks of *Europe*. From the Year 1649. till the Year 1659. To which is added, An Account of his Life. Together with several of his Poems; And a Catalogue of his Works, never before Printed.

Mathematical Magick: Or the Wonders that may be performed by Mechanical Geometry. In Two Books. Concerning *Mechanical Powers*, *Motions*. Being one of the most easie, pleasant, useful, (and yet most neglected) part of Mathematicks, not before treated of in this Language.

\* *Mercury*; or the Secret and Swift Messenger Shewing how a man may with privacy and speed communicate his Thoughts to a Friend at any distance. The Second Edition. By the Right Reverend Father in God, *John Wilkins*, late Lord Bishop of *Chester*. Printed for *Rich. Baldwin*, where are to be had, The World in the Moon.

*England's Interest*; Or, a Discipline for Seamen: Wherein is proposed, a Sure Method for Raising Qualified Seamen for the well Manning Their Majesties Fleet on all Occasions. Also a Method whereby Seamen will be obliged mutually to Relieve each other on board the Men of War yearly, or thereabout; except where any Seaman by his own voluntary Consent shall be willing to stay longer. Likewise is shewed the Advantages which by these Methods will accrue to the Nation in general, and in particular to the Merchants and Seamen: For hereby the Wages now given in Merchant-Ships will be brought lower, and every Seaman will have the liberty of chusing his own Commander, after the first year, and continuing with him, if he so likes. By Captain *George St. Lo*.

An Answer to a Paper written by Count d'*Avaux*, the *French King's* Ambassador in *Sueden*, concerning the Proposals of Peace made by *France* to the Confederates.

## *Books sold by R. Baldwin.*

An Essay concerning Obedience to the Supream Powers, and the Duty of Subjects in all Revolutions. With some Considerations touching the present Juncture of Affairs.

An Essay concerning the Laws of Nations, and the Rights of Sovereigns. With an Account of what was said at the Council-board by the Civilians upon the Question, Whether Their Majesties Subjects taken at Sea acting by the Late King's Commission might not be looked on as Pirates? With Reflections upon the Arguments of Sir T. P. and Dr. Ol. Both by *Matth. Tyndal*, Doctor of Laws. The Second Edition.

The Antiquity and Justice of an Oath of Abjuration. In answer to a Treatise, Entitled, The Case of an Oath of Abjuration considered.

A Sermon preached before the Right Honourable the Lord- Mayor, and the Court of Aldermen of the City of *London*, at *St. Mary-le-Bow*, on the 29th of *May*, 1694. By *John Trenchard*, M A Rector of *Wrexhall* in the County of *Somerset*, and Chaplain to the Right Honourable the Earl of *Manchester*.

A Poem on the Late Promotions of several Eminent Persons in Church and State. By *N. Nate*, Servant to Their Majesties.

The Doctrine of the Holy Trinity placed in its due light, by an Answer to a late Book, Entitled, Animadversions upon Dr. *Sherlock's* Book, &c. Also the Doctrine of the Incarnation of our Lord asserted and explained.

The Memoirs of Monsieur *Deagant*: Containing the most secret Transactions and Affairs of *France*, from the Death of *Henry VI.* till the beginning of the Ministry of Cardinal *de Richelieu*, &c.

Memoirs concerning the Campagne of Three Kings, *William*, *Lewis*, and *James*, in the Year 1692. With Reflections on the great Endeavours of *Lewis* the 14th to effect his Designs, of *James* the 2d to Remount the Throne, and the proper Methods for the Allies to take to hinder both.

*Liturgia*

## Books sold by R. Baldwin.

*Liturgia Tigurina* : Or, the Book of Common-Prayer and Administration of the Sacraments, and other Ecclesiastical Rites and Ceremonies, usually practised, and solemnly performed in all the Churches and Chappels of the City and Canton of Zurich in Switzerland, &c.

*State-Tracts*. In two parts. The first part being a Collection of several Treatises relating to the Government, privately printed in the Reign of King Charles II. The second part consisting of a farther Collection of several choice Treatises relating to the Government, from the Year 1660, to 1689. Now published in a Body, to shew the Necessity, and clear the Legality of the late Revolution, and our present Happy Settlement under the Auspicious Reign of Their Majesties King William and Queen Mary.

The Tragedies of the Last Age, consider'd and examin'd by the Practice of the Ancients, and by the common sense of all Ages; in a Letter to *Fleetwood Shepherd*, Esq; Part I. The Second Edition.

A short View of Tragedy; its Original, Excellency, and Corruption; with some Reflections on *Shakespeare* and other Practitioners for the Stage. Both by Mr. Rimer, Servant to Their Majesties.

A New, Plain, Short, and Compleat *French* and *English Grammar*; whereby the Learner may attain in few months to speak and write *French* correctly, as they do now in the Court of *France*; and wherein all that is dark, superfluous, and deficient in other *Grammars*, is plain, short, and methodically supplied. Also very useful to Strangers that are desirous to learn the *English* Tongue; for whose sake is added a short, but very exact *English Grammar*. The Third Edition, with Additions. By *Peter Berault*.

Truth brought to light; or the History of the first 14 Years of King James I. In Four Parts, &c.

Travels into divers parts of *Europe* and *Asia*, undertaken by the *French* King's order, to discover a new



*Books sold by R. Baldwin.*

new way by land into *China* ; containing many curious Remarks in Natural Philosophy, Geography, Hydrography, and History. Together with a Description of *Great Tartary*, and of the different People who inhabit there. Done out of *French*. To which is added a Supplement extracted from *Hakluyt* and *Purchas*, giving an Account of several Journeys over Land from *Russia*, *Persia*, and the *Mogul's* Country, to *China*, together with the Roads and distances of the Places.

*Europe's* Chains broke ; or a sure and speedy Project to rescue her from the present Usurpations of the Tyrant of *France*.

The Cabinet opened, or the secret History of the Amours of *Madam de Maintenon* with the *French* King. Translated from the *French* Copy.

*Saul* at *Endor* ; or the Ghost of the *Marquess de Louvois* consulted by the *French* King, concerning the present Affairs. Done out of *French*.

An Answer to the late King *James's* Declaration, dated at *St. Germain's*, April the 7th. S. N. 1693. Licensed by Mr. Secretary *Trenchard*.

Reflections upon two Pamphlets lately published ; one called, *A Letter from Monsieur de Crois, concerning the Memoirs of Christendom* ; And the other, *An Answer to that Letter* ; pretended to have been written by the Author of the said Memoirs. By a Lover of Truth.

A true and exact Account of the Retaking a Ship called, *The Friends Adventure of Topsam*, from the *French*, after she had been taken six days, and they were upon the Coasts of *France* with it four days ; where one Englishman and a Boy set upon seven Frenchmen, killed two of them, took the other five Prisoners, and brought the Ship and them safe to *England*, &c.

A Project of a Descent upon *France*. By a Person of Quality.

A Com-

*Books sold by R. Baldwin.*

A Compendious History of the Taxes of *France*, and of the Opreſſive Methods of Raiſing of them.

An Impartial Enquiry into the Advantages and Loſſes that *England* hath received ſince the beginning of this Preſent War with *France*.

The Gentleman's Journal: Or the Monthly Miſcellany. In a Letter to a Gentleman in the Country. Conſiſting of *News, Hiſtory, Philoſophy, Poetry, Muſick, Tranſlations, &c.* Sold by R. Baldwin, Where are to be had compleat Sets for the two laſt years, or ſingle ones for every Month.

A Collection of Speeches of the Right Honourable *Henry* late Earl of *Warrington*, viz I. His Speech upon his being ſworn Mayor of *Cheſter*, in November 1691. II. His Speech to the Grand Jury at *Cheſter*, April 13. 1692. III. His Charge to the Grand Jury at the Quarter-Sessions held for the County of *Cheſter*, on the 11th. of *October*, 1692. IV. His Charge to the Grand Jury at the Quarter-Sessions held for the County of *Cheſter*, on the 25th. of *April*, 1693.

*Victoria Anglicana*: Being an Hiſtorical Collection of all the memorable and ſtupendious Victories obtained by the *English* againſt the *French*, both by Sea and Land, ſince the *Norman Conqueſt, &c.*

A Brief Diſquiſition of the Law of Nature, according to the Principles and Method laid down in the Reverend Dr. *Cumberland's* (now Lord Biſhop of *Peterborough's*) *Latin* Treatiſe on that Subject. As alſo his Confutation of Mr. *Hobbs's* Principles, put into another method. With the Right Reverend Author's Approbation.

The Life of *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, late Prince of *Conde*. Digested into Annals. With many curious Remarks on the Tranſactions of *Europe* for theſe laſt Sixty Years. Done out of *French*.

*Nevil Pain's* Letter, and ſome other Letters that concern the Subject of his Letter. With ſhort Notes on them, for the clearer Information of the Members of Parliament, in order to *Nevil Pain's* Trial.

once,  
em.  
ges  
be.

hly  
the  
y,  
in,  
wo

ra-  
ch  
ber  
er,  
ry  
ne-  
ge  
or  
3.  
i-  
es  
y

-  
n  
p  
i.  
,  
l

s